



## (51) International Patent Classification:

*C07D 519/00* (2006.01) *A61K 31/437* (2006.01)  
*C07D 487/04* (2006.01) *A61P 35/00* (2006.01)

## (21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2016/013136

## (22) International Filing Date:

13 January 2016 (13.01.2016)

## (25) Filing Language:

English

## (26) Publication Language:

English

## (30) Priority Data:

62/103,157 14 January 2015 (14.01.2015) US  
 62/215,928 9 September 2015 (09.09.2015) US

## (71) Applicant: BRISTOL-MYERS SQUIBB COMPANY

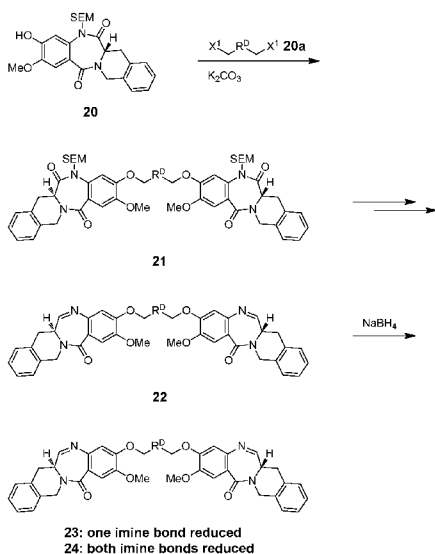
[US/US]; Route 206 and Province Line Road, Princeton,  
 New Jersey 08543 (US).

## (72) Inventors: ZHANG, Yong; c/o Bristol-Myers Squibb

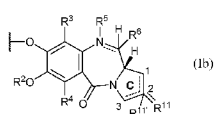
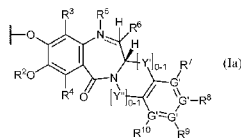
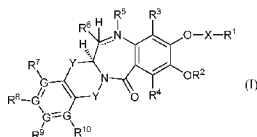
Company, Route 206 and Province Line Road, Princeton,  
 New Jersey 08543 (US). MCDONALD, Ivar M.; c/o Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, 5 Research Parkway, Wallingford, Connecticut 06492 (US). CHOWDARI, Naidu S.; c/o Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, 700 Bay Road, Redwood City, California 94063 (US). HUYNH, Tram N.; c/o Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, Route 206 and Province Line Road, Princeton, New Jersey 08543 (US). BORZILLERI, Robert M.; c/o Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, Route 206 and Province Line Road, Princeton, New Jersey 08543 (US). GANGWAR, Sanjeev; c/o Bristol-Myers

[Continued on next page]

## (54) Title: BENZODIAZEPINE DIMERS, CONJUGATES THEREOF, AND METHODS OF MAKING AND USING

**Fig. 4a**

(57) Abstract: Benzodiazepine dimers having a structure represented by wherein the variables in formulae (I), (Ia), and (Ib) are as defined in the application. Such dimers are useful as anti-cancer agents, especially when used in an antibody-drug conjugate (ADC).





Squibb Company, 700 Bay Road, Redwood City, California 94063 (US).

(74) **Agents:** CHAO, Yuan et al.; Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, Route 206 and Province Line Road, Princeton, New Jersey 08543 (US).

(81) **Designated States** (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) **Designated States** (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,

GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Declarations under Rule 4.17:**

- as to applicant's entitlement to apply for and be granted a patent (Rule 4.17(ii))
- as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii))
- of inventorship (Rule 4.17(iv))

**Published:**

- with international search report (Art. 21(3))

# BENZODIAZEPINE DIMERS, CONJUGATES THEREOF, AND METHODS OF MAKING AND USING

## CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

This application claims priority to U.S. Provisional Applications Serial Nos. USSN  
 5 62/103,157 filed January 14, 2015 and USSN 62/215,928 filed September 9, 2015, the entire  
 content of which is incorporated herein by reference.

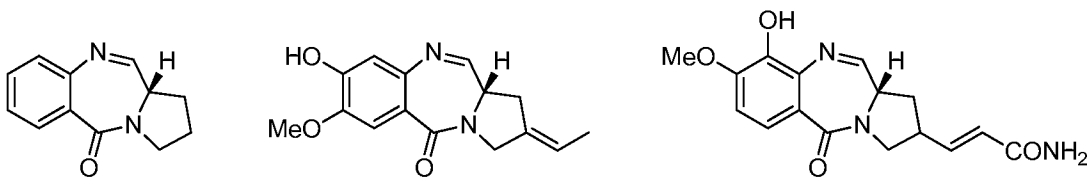
## TECHNICAL FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to benzodiazepine dimers, dimer-linker compounds derived  
 therefrom, and conjugates thereof, and methods for their preparation and use.

10

## BACKGROUND ART

Several naturally occurring cytotoxic compounds having a benzodiazepine ring  
 system are known. Reflecting the additional presence in the molecular scaffold of a five-  
 member pyrrolidine ring fused to the diazepine ring, such compounds are commonly referred  
 to as pyrrolobenzodiazepines, or PBDs. Examples include tomaymycin and anthramycin.



15

PBD Scaffold

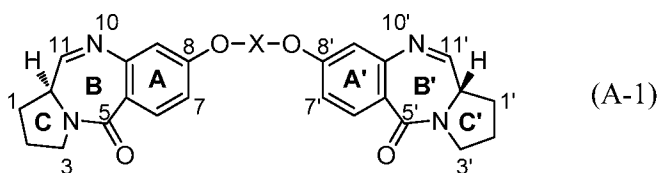
Tomaymycin

Anthramycin

20

PBDs possess antibiotic and antitumor activity, the latter trait leading to interest  
 in them as anticancer drugs. Mechanistically, PBDs bind to the minor groove of DNA in a  
 sequence selective manner and, once bound, alkylate the DNA. The structure-activity  
 relationship (SAR) of different substituents has been studied (Antonow *et al.* 2010; Thurston  
*et al.* 1999).

Additional studies have shown that PBD dimers show special promise as  
 anticancer agents. The core structure of a typical PBD dimer can be represented by formula  
 (A-1), where X is a bridging group connecting the two dimer halves.



(A-1)

As with monomeric PBDs, the dimers are DNA minor groove binder-alkylators. Being bifunctional, alkylation by a dimer results in cross-linked DNA, making DNA repair more difficult. (DNA alkylation occurs via the imine group. PBDs having one of the imine groups reduced can still alkylate DNA, but cannot crosslink it. They are still biologically active, albeit generally less so, but their different pharmacokinetic profile may be preferable for some applications.) For a review on the evolution of PBDs as antitumor agents, from naturally occurring monomers to synthetic monomers to synthetic dimers, see Hartley 2011.

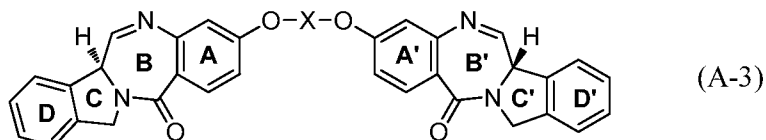
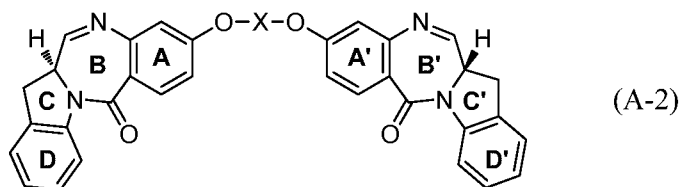
The SAR of PBD dimers has been explored via substituents on the A/A' and C/C' rings, unsaturation in the C/C' rings, the structure and length of the bridging group X, and the oxidation or reduction of the imine double bonds in rings B/B', and combinations of such features. See Bose *et al.* 1992, Gregson *et al.* 1999, Gregson *et al.* 2001a and 2001b, Gregson *et al.* 2004, Gregson *et al.* 2009, Hartley *et al.* 2012, Howard *et al.* 2007, Howard *et al.* 2009a, Howard *et al.* 2010, Howard *et al.* 2013a and 2013b, Liu *et al.* 2007, Thurston *et al.* 1996, Thurston *et al.* 2006, and Thurston *et al.* 2008. Most PBD dimers are joined via an 8/8' bridge as shown above, but a 7/7' bridge also has been disclosed (Howard *et al.* 2009b).

A type of anticancer agent that is generating strong interest is an antibody-drug conjugate (ADC, also referred to as an immunoconjugate). In an ADC, a therapeutic agent (also referred to as the drug, payload, or warhead) is covalently linked to an antibody whose antigen is expressed by a cancer cell (tumor associated antigen). The antibody, by binding to the antigen, delivers the ADC to the cancer site. There, cleavage of the covalent link or degradation of the antibody leads to the release of the therapeutic agent. Conversely, while the ADC is circulating in the blood system, the therapeutic agent is held inactive because of its covalent linkage to the antibody. Thus, the therapeutic agent used in an ADC can be much more potent (*i.e.*, cytotoxic) than ordinary chemotherapy agents because of its localized release. For a review on ADCs, see Schrama *et al.* 2006.

PBD dimers have been proposed as the drug in an ADC. Attachment of the linker connecting to the antibody can be via a functional group located in a C/C' ring, the bridging group X, or by addition across the imine group in a B/B' ring. See Beau-Larvor *et al.* 2014, Bouchard *et al.* 2013, Commercon *et al.* 2013a and 2013b, Flygare *et al.* 2013, Gauzy *et al.* 2012, Howard 2104a-2014e, Howard *et al.* 2011, Howard *et al.* 2013c and 2013d, Howard *et al.* 2014a-2014h, Jeffrey *et al.* 2013, Jeffrey *et al.* 2014a and 2014b, and Zhao *et al.* 2014.

Another type of benzodiazepine dimer also has been proposed as a therapeutic agent for use in ADCs. Structurally, this type may be viewed as a PBD dimer further having

a phenyl ring fused to each of C/C' rings, as shown in formulae (A-2) and (A-3). See Chari *et al.* 2013, Li *et al.* 2013, Fishkin *et al.* 2014, Li *et al.* 2014.



5

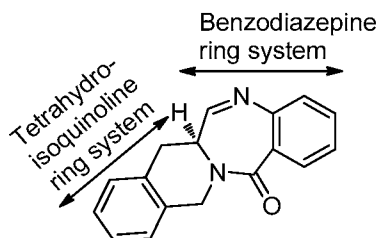
Benzodiazepine compounds having other ring systems, such as a tetrahydro-isoquinolino[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine, also have been disclosed. Kothakonda *et al.* 2004.

Full citations for the documents cited herein by first author or inventor and year are listed at the end of this specification.

10

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides novel benzodiazepine dimers, preferably in which at least one of the benzodiazepine units has a tetrahydroisoquinoline (THIQ) ring system fused to a benzodiazepine ring system. Optionally, the imine bond in the benzodiazepine ring system can be reduced.

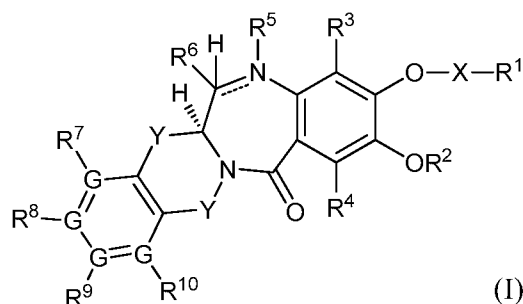


15

Both units (halves) of the dimer can have a THIQ ring system ("THIQ-THIQ dimer" or "THIQ homodimer"), or one unit can have a THIQ ring system while the other unit has a different benzodiazepine ring system, such as a PBD ring system (generally, a "THIQ heterodimer" or, in this particular example, a "THIQ-PBD dimer"). In a THIQ-THIQ dimer the two units can be identical ("symmetric THIQ-THIQ dimer") or different ("asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimer").

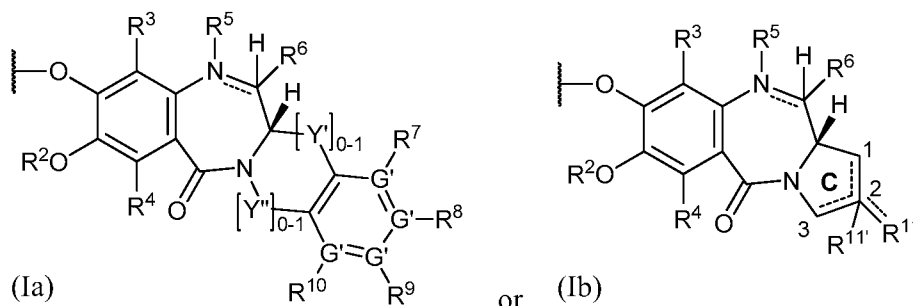
20

Thus, this invention provides a benzodiazepine dimer having a structure represented by formula (I):



wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is according to formula (Ia) or formula (Ib):



5 each G and G' is C or N, with the proviso that no more than two Gs or two G's are N;

each R<sup>2</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl;

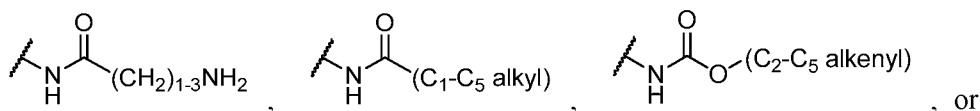
each R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), cyano, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, or NO<sub>2</sub>;

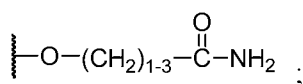
10 each double line ===== in a diazepine ring system independently represents a single bond or a double bond;

each R<sup>5</sup> is H if the double line ===== to the N to which it is attached – *i.e.*, with which it is associated – is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

15 each R<sup>6</sup> is H, OH, SO<sub>3</sub>Na, or SO<sub>3</sub>K if the double line ===== to the C to which it is attached – *i.e.*, with which it is associated – is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

20 each R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and R<sup>10</sup> is independently H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, C≡C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>,





or where a R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is attached to – *i.e.*, is associated with– to a G or G' that is N, such R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is absent;

the dotted lines in ring C of formula (Ib) indicate the optional presence of a C1-C2, C2-C3,  
5 or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond;

R<sup>11</sup> is H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, =CH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), CH=CH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, C≡C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>,

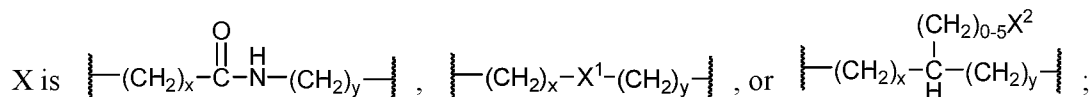
C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl),  
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 4- to 7-membered aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, or heterocycloalkyl

unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered

10 cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or

O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with  
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>;

R<sup>11'</sup> is absent if a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond is present and otherwise is H;



15 X<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, NH, S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkylene or heterocycloalkylene  
unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 6-membered arylene  
unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, or 5-membered  
heteroarylene unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>;

each X<sup>2</sup> is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkylene), CO<sub>2</sub>H, N<sub>3</sub>,

20 CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, SH, CHO,  
N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), NHNH<sub>2</sub>, or C(=O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>;

x and y are independently 1, 2, or 3;

each Y is independently CH<sub>2</sub>, C=O, or CHR<sup>12</sup>; wherein each R<sup>12</sup> is independently F, Cl, Br,  
or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl; and

25 Y' and Y'' are independently CH<sub>2</sub>, C=O, or CHR<sup>12</sup>; wherein each R<sup>12</sup> is independently F, Cl,  
Br, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of Y' and Y'' is present (*i.e.*, the  
associated subscript is 1);

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another embodiment, this invention provides a conjugate comprising a dimer of  
30 formula (I) covalently bonded to a targeting moiety that specifically or preferentially binds to  
a chemical entity on a target cell, which target cell preferably is a cancer cell. Preferably, the

targeting moiety is an antibody – more preferably a monoclonal antibody; even more preferably a human monoclonal antibody – and the chemical entity is a tumor associated antigen. The tumor associated antigen can be one that is displayed on the surface of a cancer cell or one that is secreted by a cancer cell into the surrounding extracellular space.

- 5 Preferably, the tumor associated antigen is one that is over-expressed by the cancer cell compared to normal cells or one that is expressed by cancer cells but not normal cells.

In another embodiment, there is provided a dimer according to formula (I) covalently bonded to a linker moiety having a reactive functional group, suitable for conjugation to a targeting moiety.

- 10 In another embodiment, there is provided a method for treating a cancer in a subject suffering from such cancer, comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a dimer of this invention or a conjugate thereof with a targeting moiety. In another embodiment, there is provided the use of a dimer of this invention or a conjugate thereof with a targeting moiety for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of
- 15 cancer in a subject suffering from such cancer. A dimer of this invention or a conjugate thereof with a targeting moiety can also be used to inhibit the proliferation, *in vitro*, *ex vivo*, or *in vivo*, of cancer cells. Especially, the cancer can be lung, gastric, ovarian, renal, or liver cancer.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWING(S)

- 20 **Figs. 1, 2, and 3** show schemes for the syntheses of various intermediates used in the preparation of dimers of this invention.

**Fig. 4** shows a generic scheme for preparing of symmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers. **Fig. 4a** shows the the synthesis of a particular THIQ-THIQ dimer.

- Fig. 5** shows a generic scheme for preparing asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers.

- 25 **Fig. 6** shows a scheme for preparing a dimer of this invention where the bridge linking the two dimer halves is not bilaterally symmetric.

**Figs. 7a and 7b** show schemes for the preparation of THIQ-PBD dimers.

**Fig. 8** shows a scheme for the preparation of additional asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers.

- 30 **Fig. 9** shows a scheme for the preparation of another THIQ-PBD dimer.



**Figs. 10 and 11** show schemes for the synthesis of dimers of this invention, where the bridge connecting the two dimer halves has an amine group, suitable for attachment of a linker group for the construction of an ADC.

**Figs. 12 and 13** depict schemes for the synthesis of dimer-linker compounds referred to as “type (a)” hereinbelow.

**Figs. 14 and 15** depict a scheme for the synthesis of intermediates used to make dimer-linker compounds referred to as “type (b)” hereinbelow, while **Fig. 16** depicts the synthesis of such a dimer-linker compound from the intermediates so made.

**Fig. 17** shows a scheme for the preparation of a dimer of the type referred to as a THIQ-AZI dimer hereinbelow.

**Figs. 18a and 18b** show, in combination, the synthesis of a dimer suitable for making type (a) dimer-linker compounds and a dimer-linker made therefrom.

**Figs. 19 and 20** show schemes for the synthesis of additional THIQ-THIQ dimers.

**Figs. 21 and 22** show schemes for the synthesis of additional “type (b)” dimer-linker compounds.

**Fig. 23** relates to the synthesis of dimer-linker compounds having an alkylamino group, which can act as amine donors in a transglutaminase-mediated conjugation.

## DESCRIPTION OF EMBODIMENTS

### DEFINITIONS

“Antibody” means whole antibodies and any antigen binding fragment (*i.e.*, “antigen-binding portion”) or single chain variants thereof. A whole antibody is a protein comprising at least two heavy (H) chains and two light (L) chains inter-connected by disulfide bonds. Each heavy chain comprises a heavy chain variable region ( $V_H$ ) and a heavy chain constant region comprising three domains,  $CH_1$ ,  $CH_2$  and  $CH_3$ . Each light chain comprises a light chain variable region ( $V_L$  or  $V_k$ ) and a light chain constant region comprising one single domain,  $CL$ . The  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  regions can be further subdivided into regions of hypervariability, termed complementarity determining regions (CDRs), interspersed with more conserved framework regions (FRs). Each  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  comprises three CDRs and four FRs, arranged from amino- to carboxy-terminus in the following order: FR1, CDR1, FR2, CDR2, FR3, CDR3, and FR4. The variable regions contain a binding domain that interacts with an antigen. The constant regions may mediate the binding of the antibody to host tissues or factors, including various cells of the immune system (*e.g.*, effector cells) and the

first component (C1q) of the classical complement system. An antibody is said to “specifically bind” to an antigen X if the antibody binds to antigen X with a  $K_D$  of  $5 \times 10^{-8}$  M or less, more preferably  $1 \times 10^{-8}$  M or less, more preferably  $6 \times 10^{-9}$  M or less, more preferably  $3 \times 10^{-9}$  M or less, even more preferably  $2 \times 10^{-9}$  M or less. The antibody can be chimeric, humanized, or, preferably, human. The heavy chain constant region can be engineered to affect glycosylation type or extent, to extend antibody half-life, to enhance or reduce interactions with effector cells or the complement system, or to modulate some other property. The engineering can be accomplished by replacement, addition, or deletion of one or more amino acids or by replacement of a domain with a domain from another immunoglobulin type, or a combination of the foregoing.

“Antigen binding fragment” and “antigen binding portion” of an antibody (or simply “antibody portion” or “antibody fragment”) mean one or more fragments of an antibody that retain the ability to specifically bind to an antigen. It has been shown that the antigen-binding function of an antibody can be performed by fragments of a full-length antibody, such as (i) a Fab fragment, a monovalent fragment consisting of the  $V_L$ ,  $V_H$ ,  $C_L$  and  $C_{H1}$  domains; (ii) a  $F(ab')_2$  fragment, a bivalent fragment comprising two Fab fragments linked by a disulfide bridge at the hinge region; (iii) a  $Fab'$  fragment, which is essentially an Fab with part of the hinge region (see, for example, Abbas *et al.*, *Cellular and Molecular Immunology*, 6th Ed., Saunders Elsevier 2007); (iv) a Fd fragment consisting of the  $V_H$  and  $C_{H1}$  domains; (v) a  $F_v$  fragment consisting of the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  domains of a single arm of an antibody, (vi) a dAb fragment (Ward *et al.*, (1989) *Nature* 341:544-546), which consists of a  $V_H$  domain; (vii) an isolated complementarity determining region (CDR); and (viii) a nanobody, a heavy chain variable region containing a single variable domain and two constant domains. Preferred antigen binding fragments are Fab,  $F(ab')_2$ ,  $Fab'$ ,  $F_v$ , and Fd fragments. Furthermore, although the two domains of the  $F_v$  fragment,  $V_L$  and  $V_H$ , are encoded by separate genes, they can be joined, using recombinant methods, by a synthetic linker that enables them to be made as a single protein chain in which the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  regions pair to form monovalent molecules (known as single chain  $F_v$ , or scFv); see, e.g., Bird *et al.* (1988) *Science* 242:423-426; and Huston *et al.* (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:5879-5883). Such single chain antibodies are also encompassed within the term “antigen-binding portion” of an antibody.

An “isolated antibody” means an antibody that is substantially free of other antibodies having different antigenic specificities (*e.g.*, an isolated antibody that specifically binds antigen X is substantially free of antibodies that specifically bind antigens other than antigen X). An isolated antibody that specifically binds antigen X may, however, have cross-reactivity to other antigens, such as antigen X molecules from other species. In certain  
5 embodiments, an isolated antibody specifically binds to human antigen X and does not cross-react with other (non-human) antigen X antigens. Moreover, an isolated antibody may be substantially free of other cellular material and/or chemicals.

“Monoclonal antibody” or “monoclonal antibody composition” means a  
10 preparation of antibody molecules of single molecular composition, which displays a single binding specificity and affinity for a particular epitope.

“Human antibody” means an antibody having variable regions in which both the framework and CDR regions (and the constant region, if present) are derived from human germline immunoglobulin sequences. Human antibodies may include later modifications,  
15 including natural or synthetic modifications. Human antibodies may include amino acid residues not encoded by human germline immunoglobulin sequences (*e.g.*, mutations introduced by random or site-specific mutagenesis *in vitro* or by somatic mutation *in vivo*). However, “human antibody” does not include antibodies in which CDR sequences derived from the germline of another mammalian species, such as a mouse, have been grafted onto human  
20 framework sequences.

“Human monoclonal antibody” means an antibody displaying a single binding specificity, which has variable regions in which both the framework and CDR regions are derived from human germline immunoglobulin sequences. In one embodiment, human monoclonal antibodies are produced by a hybridoma that includes a B cell obtained from a  
25 transgenic nonhuman animal, *e.g.*, a transgenic mouse, having a genome comprising a human heavy chain transgene and a light chain transgene fused to an immortalized cell.

“Aliphatic” means a straight- or branched-chain, saturated or unsaturated, non-aromatic hydrocarbon moiety having the specified number of carbon atoms (*e.g.*, as in “C<sub>3</sub> aliphatic,” “C<sub>1-5</sub> aliphatic,” “C<sub>1-C5</sub> aliphatic,” or “C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> aliphatic,” the latter three phrases  
30 being synonymous for an aliphatic moiety having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms) or, where the number of carbon atoms is not explicitly specified, from 1 to 4 carbon atoms (2 to 4 carbons

in the instance of unsaturated aliphatic moieties). A similar understanding is applied to the number of carbons in other types, as in C<sub>2-4</sub> alkene, C<sub>4-C7</sub> cycloaliphatic, etc.

“Alkyl” means a saturated aliphatic moiety, with the same convention for designating the number of carbon atoms being applicable. By way of illustration, C<sub>1-C4</sub> alkyl moieties include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, *t*-butyl, 1-butyl, 2-butyl, and the like. “Alkylene” means a divalent counterpart of an alkyl group, such as CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>, and CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>.

“Alkenyl” means an aliphatic moiety having at least one carbon-carbon double bond, with the same convention for designating the number of carbon atoms being applicable. By way of illustration, C<sub>2-C4</sub> alkenyl moieties include, but are not limited to, ethenyl (vinyl), 2-propenyl (allyl or prop-2-enyl), *cis*-1-propenyl, *trans*-1-propenyl, *E*- (or *Z*-) 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1,3-butadienyl (but-1,3-dienyl) and the like.

“Alkynyl” means an aliphatic moiety having at least one carbon-carbon triple bond, with the same convention for designating the number of carbon atoms being applicable. By way of illustration, C<sub>2-C4</sub> alkynyl groups include ethynyl (acetylenyl), propargyl (prop-2-ynyl), 1-propynyl, but-2-ynyl, and the like.

“Cycloaliphatic” means a saturated or unsaturated, non-aromatic hydrocarbon moiety having from 1 to 3 rings, each ring having from 3 to 8 (preferably from 3 to 6) carbon atoms. “Cycloalkyl” means a cycloaliphatic moiety in which each ring is saturated. “Cycloalkenyl” means a cycloaliphatic moiety in which at least one ring has at least one carbon-carbon double bond. “Cycloalkynyl” means a cycloaliphatic moiety in which at least one ring has at least one carbon-carbon triple bond. By way of illustration, cycloaliphatic moieties include, but are not limited to, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, and adamantyl. Preferred cycloaliphatic moieties are cycloalkyl ones, especially cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, and cyclohexyl. “Cycloalkylene” means a divalent counterpart of a cycloalkyl group.

“Heterocycloaliphatic” means a cycloaliphatic moiety wherein, in at least one ring thereof, up to three (preferably 1 to 2) carbons have been replaced with a heteroatom independently selected from N, O, or S, where the N and S optionally may be oxidized and the N optionally may be quaternized. Similarly, “heterocycloalkyl,” “heterocycloalkenyl,” and “heterocycloalkynyl” means a cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, or cycloalkynyl moiety, respectively,

in which at least one ring thereof has been so modified. Exemplary heterocycloaliphatic moieties include aziridinyl, azetidiny, 1,3-dioxanyl, oxetanyl, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl sulfone, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl sulfoxide, thiomorpholinyl sulfone, 1,3-dioxolanyl, tetrahydro-1,1-dioxothienyl, 1,4-dioxanyl, thietanyl, and the like.

“Heterocycloalkylene” means a divalent counterpart of a heterocycloalkyl group.

“Alkoxy,” “aryloxy,” “alkylthio,” and “arylthio” mean –O(alkyl), –O(aryl), –S(alkyl), and –S(aryl), respectively. Examples are methoxy, phenoxy, methylthio, and phenylthio, respectively.

“Halogen” or “halo” means fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine.

“Aryl” means a hydrocarbon moiety having a mono-, bi-, or tricyclic ring system wherein each ring has from 3 to 7 carbon atoms and at least one ring is aromatic. The rings in the ring system may be fused to each other (as in naphthyl) or bonded to each other (as in biphenyl) and may be fused or bonded to non-aromatic rings (as in indanyl or cyclohexylphenyl). By way of further illustration, aryl moieties include, but are not limited to, phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, biphenyl, phenanthryl, anthracenyl, and acenaphthyl. “Arylene” means a divalent counterpart of an aryl group, for example 1,2-phenylene, 1,3-phenylene, or 1,4-phenylene.

“Heteroaryl” means a moiety having a mono-, bi-, or tricyclic ring system wherein each ring has from 3 to 7 carbon atoms and at least one ring is an aromatic ring containing from 1 to 4 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O, or S, where the N and S optionally may be oxidized and the N optionally may be quaternized. Such at least one heteroatom containing aromatic ring may be fused to other types of rings (as in benzo-furanyl or tetrahydroisoquinolyl) or directly bonded to other types of rings (as in phenylpyridyl or 2-cyclopentylpyridyl). By way of further illustration, heteroaryl moieties include pyrrolyl, furanyl, thiophenyl (thienyl), imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, N-oxopyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, quinoliny, isoquinolynyl, quinazolinyl, cinnoliny, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, benzo-furanyl, indolyl, benzothiophenyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, phenothiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzotriazolyl, dibenzofuranyl, carbazolyl, dibenzothiophenyl, acridinyl, and the like.

“Heteroarylene” means a divalent counterpart of a heteroaryl group.

Where it is indicated that a moiety may be substituted, such as by use of “unsubstituted or substituted” or “optionally substituted” phrasing as in “unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl” or “optionally substituted heteroaryl,” such moiety may have one or more independently selected substituents, preferably one to five in number, more preferably one or two in number. Substituents and substitution patterns can be selected by one of ordinary skill in the art, having regard for the moiety to which the substituent is attached, to provide compounds that are chemically stable and that can be synthesized by techniques known in the art as well as the methods set forth herein.

“Arylalkyl,” (heterocycloaliphatic)alkyl,” “arylalkenyl,” “arylalkynyl,” “biarylalkyl,” and the like mean an alkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl moiety, as the case may be, substituted with an aryl, heterocycloaliphatic, biaryl, etc., moiety, as the case may be, with the open (unsatisfied) valence at the alkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl moiety, for example as in benzyl, phenethyl, N-imidazoylethyl, N-morpholinoethyl, and the like. Conversely, “alkylaryl,” “alkenylcycloalkyl,” and the like mean an aryl, cycloalkyl, etc., moiety, as the case may be, substituted with an alkyl, alkenyl, etc., moiety, as the case may be, for example as in methylphenyl (tolyl) or allylcyclohexyl. “Hydroxyalkyl,” “haloalkyl,” “alkylaryl,” “cyanoaryl,” and the like mean an alkyl, aryl, etc., moiety, as the case may be, substituted with one or more of the identified substituent (hydroxyl, halo, etc., as the case may be).

For example, permissible substituents include, but are not limited to, alkyl (especially methyl or ethyl), alkenyl (especially allyl), alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl, cycloaliphatic, heterocycloaliphatic, halo (especially fluoro), haloalkyl (especially trifluoromethyl), hydroxyl, hydroxyalkyl (especially hydroxyethyl), cyano, nitro, alkoxy, -O(hydroxyalkyl), -O(haloalkyl) (especially -OCF<sub>3</sub>), -O(cycloalkyl), -O(heterocycloalkyl), -O(aryl), alkylthio, arylthio, =O, =NH, =N(alkyl), =NOH, =NO(alkyl), -C(=O)(alkyl), -C(=O)H, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -C(=O)NHOH, -C(=O)O(alkyl), -C(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -C(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -C(=O)NH(alkyl), -C(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)(alkyl), -OC(=O)(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)O(alkyl), -OC(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)NH(alkyl), -OC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, azido, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH(aryl), -NH(hydroxyalkyl), -NHC(=O)(alkyl), -NHC(=O)H, -NHC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=O)NH(alkyl), -NHC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OSO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SH, -S(alkyl), -S(aryl), -S(cycloalkyl), -S(=O)alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SO<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NH(alkyl), -SO<sub>2</sub>N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, and the like.

Where the moiety being substituted is an aliphatic moiety, preferred substituents are aryl, heteroaryl, cycloaliphatic, heterocycloaliphatic, halo, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, alkoxy, -O(hydroxyalkyl), -O(haloalkyl), -O(cycloalkyl), -O(heterocycloalkyl), -O(aryl), alkylthio, arylthio, =O, =NH, =N(alkyl), =NOH, =NO(alkyl), -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -C(=O)NHOH, -C(=O)O(alkyl),  
 5 -C(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -C(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -C(=O)NH(alkyl), -C(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)(alkyl), -OC(=O)(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)O(alkyl), -OC(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)NH(alkyl), -OC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, azido, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH(aryl), -NH(hydroxyalkyl), -NHC(=O)(alkyl), -NHC(=O)H, -NHC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=O)NH(alkyl), -NHC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OSO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SH, -S(alkyl), -S(aryl), -S(=O)alkyl,  
 10 -S(cycloalkyl), -SO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SO<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NH(alkyl), and -SO<sub>2</sub>N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>. More preferred substituents are halo, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, alkoxy, -O(aryl), =O, =NOH, =NO(alkyl), -OC(=O)(alkyl), -OC(=O)O(alkyl), -OC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)NH(alkyl), -OC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, azido, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH(aryl), -NHC(=O)(alkyl), -NHC(=O)H, -NHC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=O)NH(alkyl), -NHC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, and -NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>.  
 15 Especially preferred are phenyl, cyano, halo, hydroxyl, nitro, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy, O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylene)OH, and O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylene)halo.

Where the moiety being substituted is a cycloaliphatic, heterocycloaliphatic, aryl, or heteroaryl moiety, preferred substituents are alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyl, hydroxyalkyl, cyano, nitro, alkoxy, -O(hydroxyalkyl), -O(haloalkyl), -O(aryl),  
 20 -O(cycloalkyl), -O(heterocycloalkyl), alkylthio, arylthio, -C(=O)(alkyl), -C(=O)H, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -C(=O)NHOH, -C(=O)O(alkyl), -C(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -C(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -C(=O)NH(alkyl), -C(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)(alkyl), -OC(=O)(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)O(alkyl), -OC(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)NH(alkyl), -OC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, azido, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH(aryl), -NH(hydroxyalkyl), -NHC(=O)(alkyl),  
 25 -NHC(=O)H, -NHC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=O)NH(alkyl), -NHC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OSO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SH, -S(alkyl), -S(aryl), -S(cycloalkyl), -S(=O)alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>(alkyl), -SO<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NH(alkyl), and -SO<sub>2</sub>N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>. More preferred substituents are alkyl, alkenyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyl, hydroxyalkyl, cyano, nitro, alkoxy, -O(hydroxyalkyl), -C(=O)(alkyl), -C(=O)H, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -C(=O)NHOH, -C(=O)O(alkyl), -C(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -C(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>,  
 30 -C(=O)NH(alkyl), -C(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)(alkyl), -OC(=O)(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)O(alkyl), -OC(=O)O(hydroxyalkyl), -OC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(=O)NH(alkyl), -OC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NH(alkyl), -N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, -NH(aryl), -NHC(=O)(alkyl), -NHC(=O)H,

-NHC(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHC(=O)NH(alkyl), -NHC(=O)N(alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, and -NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>.

Especially preferred are C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, halo, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy.

Where a range is stated, as in "C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl" or "5 to 10%," such range includes the end points of the range, as in C<sub>1</sub> and C<sub>5</sub> in the first instance and 5% and 10% in the  
5 second instance.

Unless particular stereoisomers are specifically indicated (e.g., by a bolded or dashed bond at a relevant stereocenter in a structural formula, by depiction of a double bond as having E or Z configuration in a structural formula, or by use stereochemistry-designating nomenclature), all stereoisomers are included within the scope of the invention, as pure  
10 compounds as well as mixtures thereof. Unless otherwise indicated, individual enantiomers, diastereomers, geometrical isomers, and combinations and mixtures thereof are all encompassed by this invention.

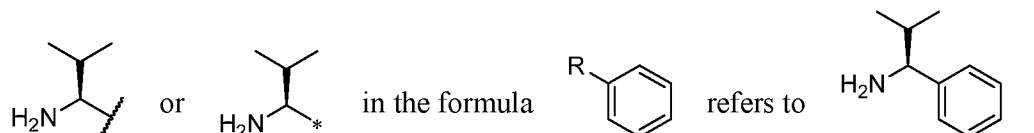
Those skilled in the art will appreciate that compounds may have tautomeric forms (e.g., keto and enol forms), resonance forms, and zwitterionic forms that are equivalent  
15 to those depicted in the structural formulae used herein and that the structural formulae encompass such tautomeric, resonance, or zwitterionic forms.

"Pharmaceutically acceptable ester" means an ester that hydrolyzes *in vivo* (for example in the human body) to produce the parent compound or a salt thereof or has *per se* activity similar to that of the parent compound. Suitable esters include C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub>  
20 alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkynyl esters, especially methyl, ethyl or n-propyl.

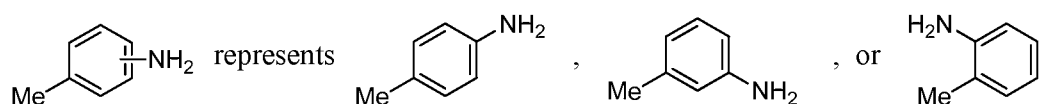
"Pharmaceutically acceptable salt" means a salt of a compound suitable for pharmaceutical formulation. Where a compound has one or more basic groups, the salt can be an acid addition salt, such as a sulfate, hydrobromide, tartrate, mesylate, maleate, citrate, phosphate, acetate, pamoate (embonate), hydroiodide, nitrate, hydrochloride, lactate, methyl-  
25 sulfate, fumarate, benzoate, succinate, mesylate, lactobionate, suberate, tosylate, and the like. Where a compound has one or more acidic groups, the salt can be a salt such as a calcium salt, potassium salt, magnesium salt, meglumine salt, ammonium salt, zinc salt, piperazine salt, tromethamine salt, lithium salt, choline salt, diethylamine salt, 4-phenylcyclohexylamine salt, benzathine salt, sodium salt, tetramethylammonium salt, and the like. Polymorphic  
30 crystalline forms and solvates are also encompassed within the scope of this invention.



In the formulae of this specification, a wavy line (~~~~~) transverse to a bond or an asterisk (\*) at the end of the bond denotes a covalent attachment site. For instance, a statement that R is



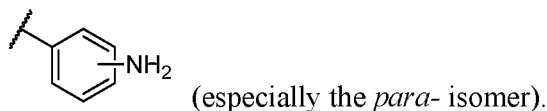
- 5 In the formulae of this specification, a bond traversing an aromatic ring between two carbons thereof means that the group attached to the bond may be located at any of the available positions of the aromatic ring. By way of illustration, the formula



## DIMERS

- 10 In formulae **(I)**, **(Ia)**, and **(Ib)**, preferably each  $R^2$  is Me. More preferably, each  $R^2$  is Me and each  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^{10}$  is H (in respect of  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^{10}$ , where present).

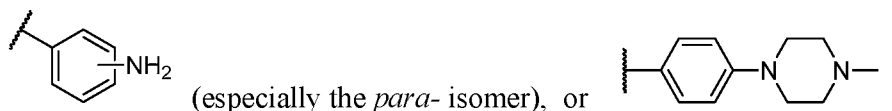
In formulae **(I)** and **(Ia)**, preferably each  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^{10}$  is H and each  $R^9$  is independently H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



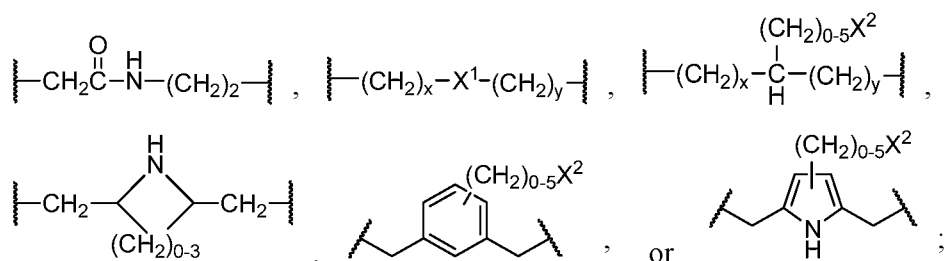
- 15 In a preferred embodiment of formula **(Ia)**, each  $G'$  is C,  $Y'$  and  $Y''$  are both  $CH_2$ . In another preferred embodiment of formula **(Ia)**, one  $G'$  is N,  $Y'$  is  $CH_2$ , and  $Y''$  is absent (*i.e.*, the associated subscript is 0).

Preferably, in formula **(I)**, each  $X^2$  is independently Me,  $CO_2H$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NH(C_1-C_5 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $N(C_1-C_5 \text{ alkyl})_2$ , SH, CHO,  $N(CH_2CH_2)_2N(C_1-C_3 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $NHNH_2$ , or  $C(=O)NHNH_2$ .

- 20 In formula **(Ib)**,  $R^{11}$  preferably is H,  $=CH_2$ ,  $CH=CHMe$ ,  $=CHMe$ ,  $C\equiv CCH_2NH_2$ ,

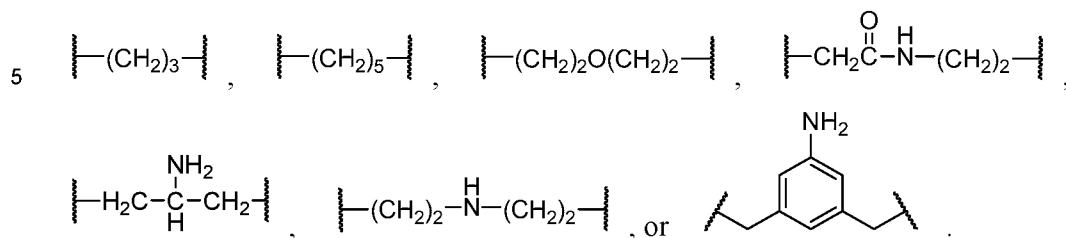


In formula **(I)**, X preferably is



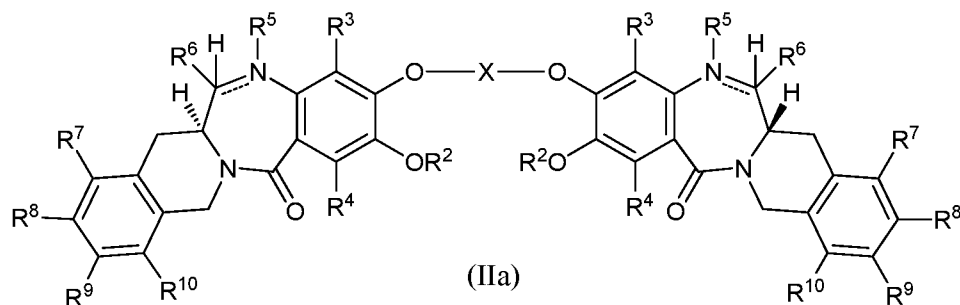
where  $\text{X}^1$  is  $\text{CH}_2$ , O, or  $\text{NH}$ ;  $\text{X}^2$  is  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , or  $\text{NH}_2$ ; and the sum of  $x$  and  $y$  is 2 or 4.

More preferably,  $\text{X}$  is



Preferably, where a formula includes two benzodiazepine ring systems each shown with a double line  $\equiv$ , at least one of such double lines is a double bond.

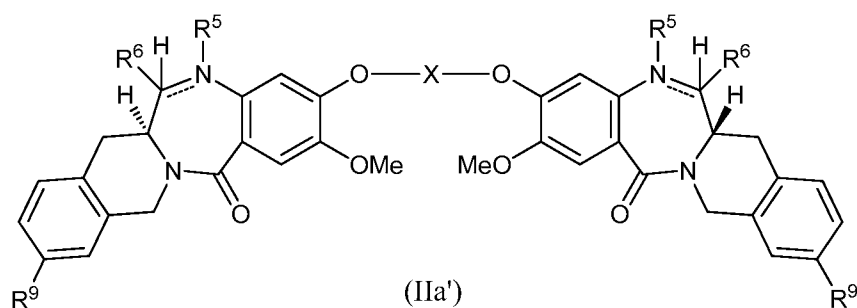
A dimer of this invention can be a THIQ-THIQ dimer; that is, in formula (I)  $\text{R}^1$  is according to formula (Ia). Such a dimer can be represented by formula (IIa)



wherein

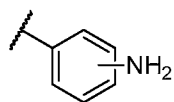
$\text{R}^2, \text{R}^3, \text{R}^4, \text{R}^5, \text{R}^6, \text{R}^7, \text{R}^8, \text{R}^9, \text{R}^{10}$ , the double line  $\equiv$ , and  $\text{X}$  are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove in respect of formula (I).

In a preferred embodiment according the formula (IIa), THIQ-THIQ dimers are represented by formula (IIa'),

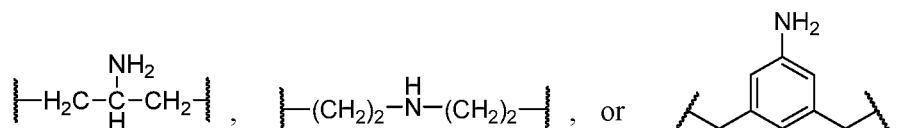
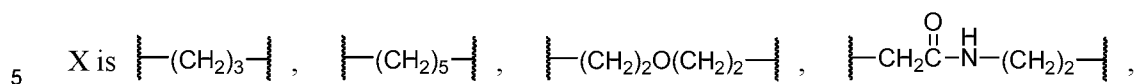


wherein

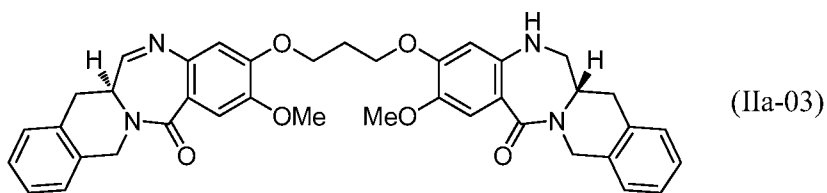
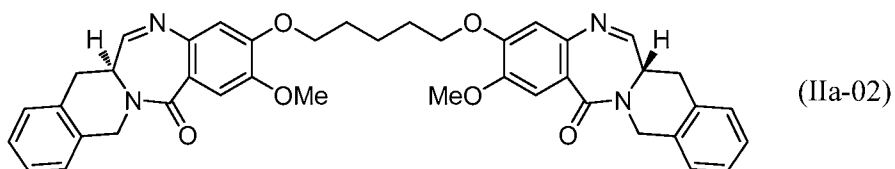
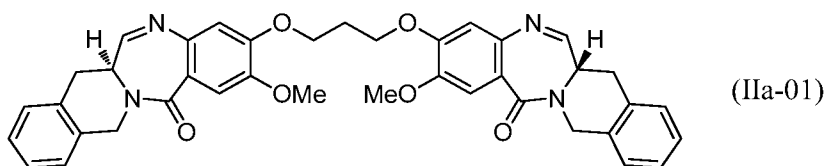
each  $R^9$  is independently H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or

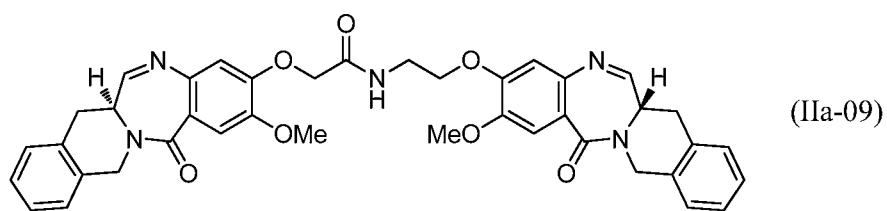
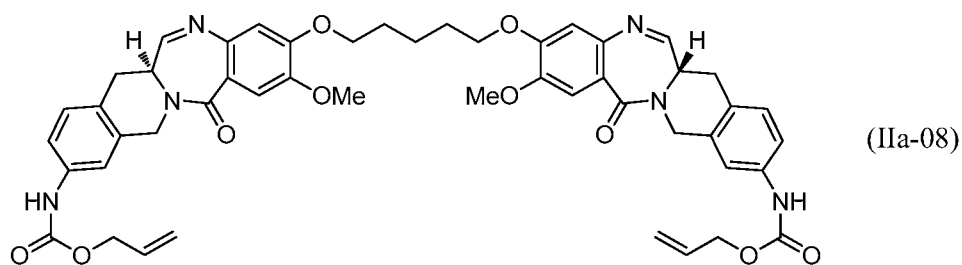
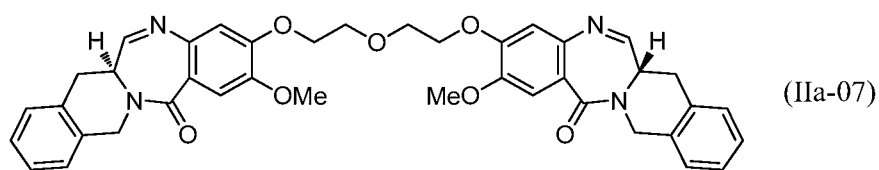
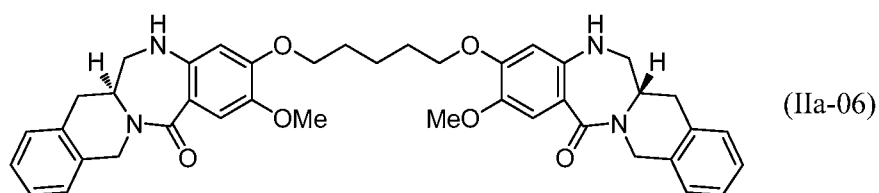
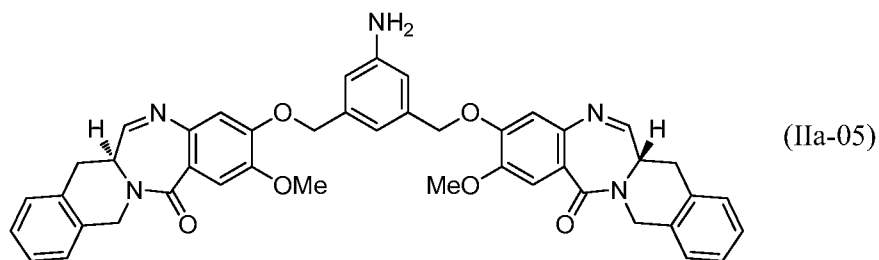
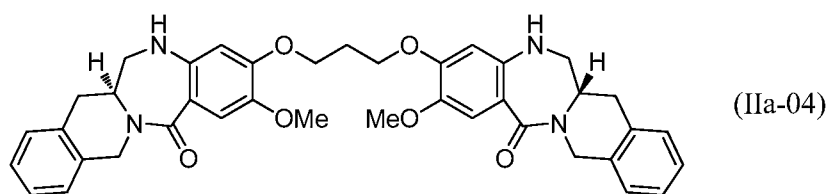


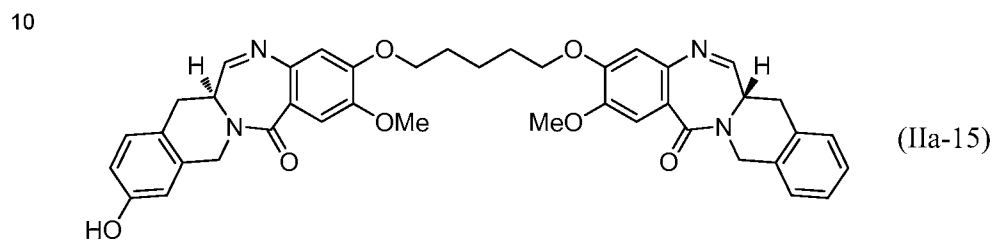
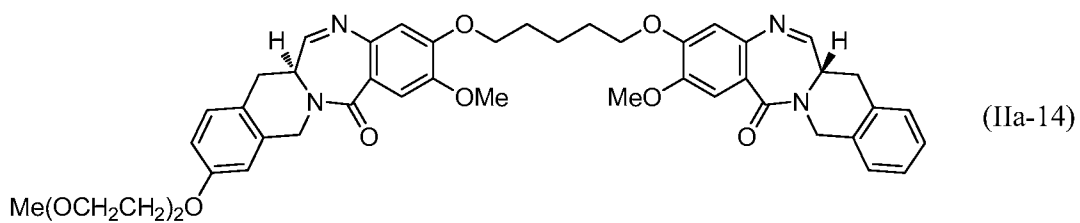
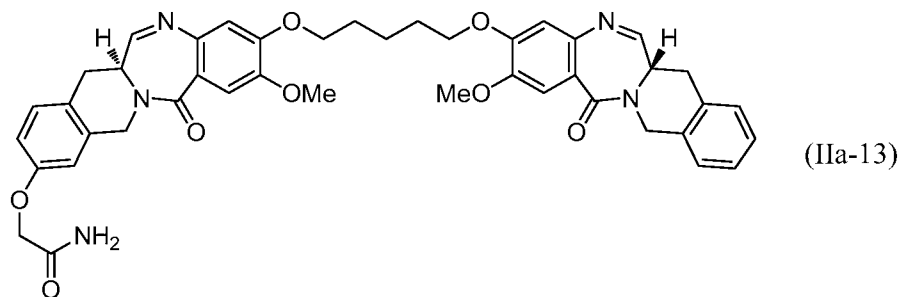
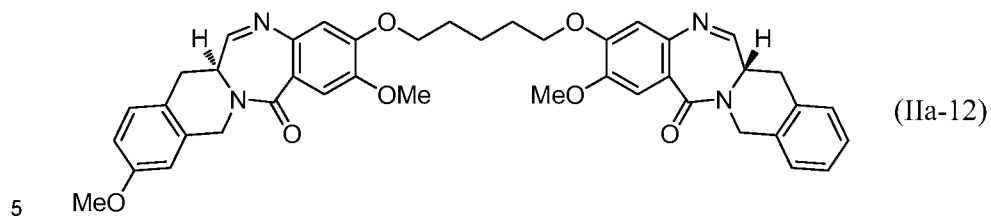
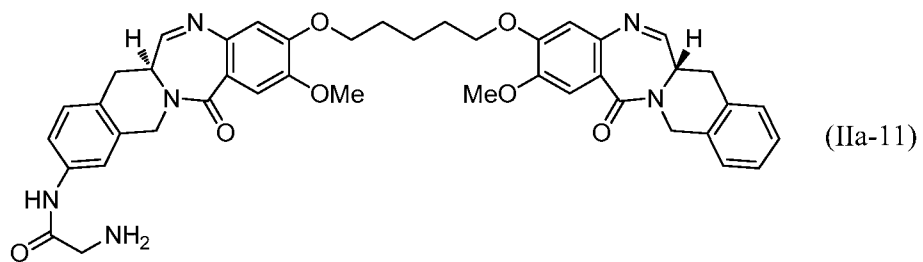
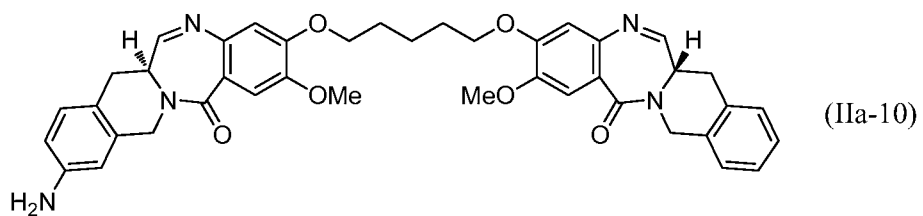
(especially the *para*- isomer); and

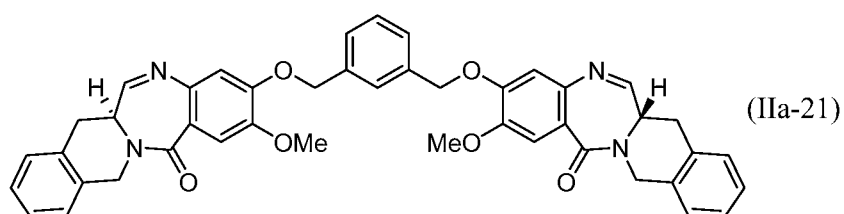
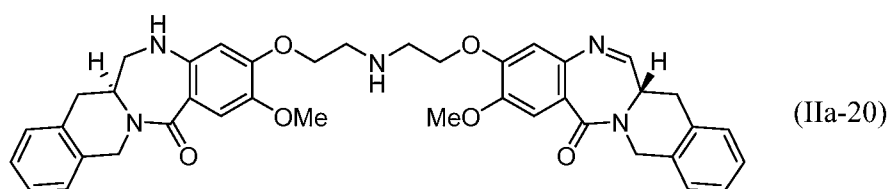
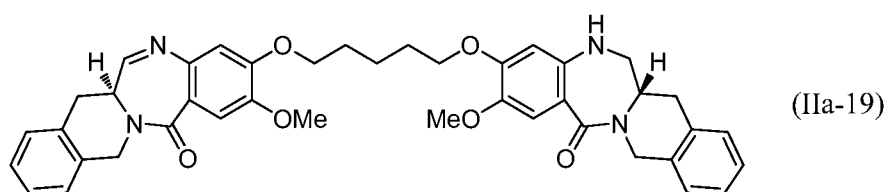
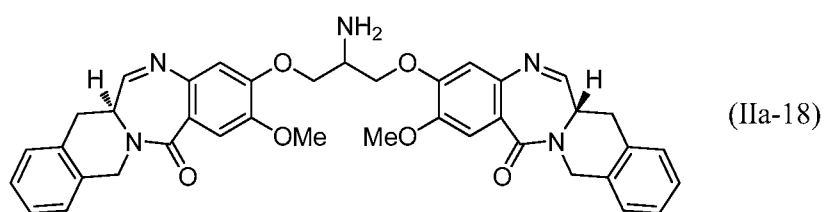
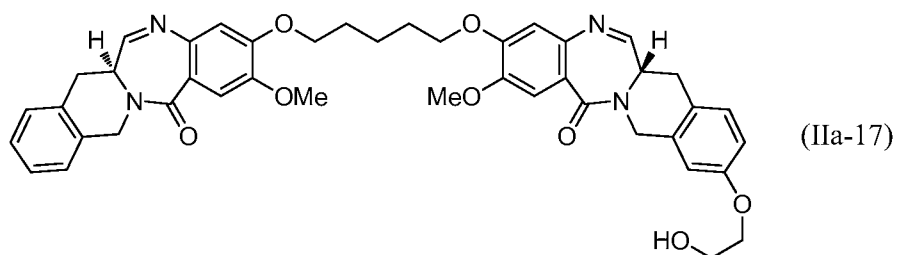
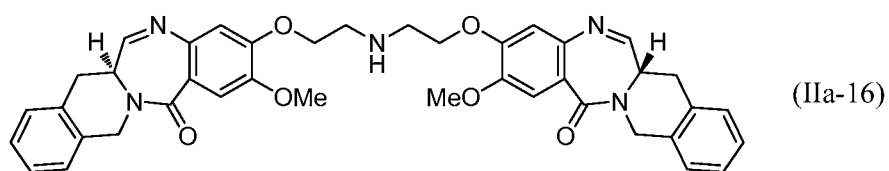


Specific examples of THIQ-THIQ dimers include:

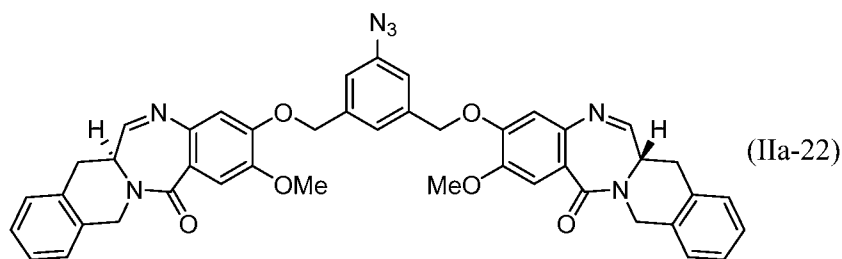








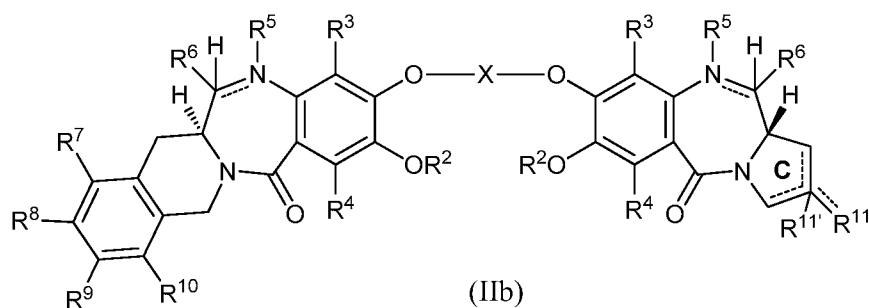
, and



Especially preferred THIQ-THIQ dimers are (IIa-16) and (IIa-20).

In another embodiment, a dimer of this invention is a THIQ-PBD dimer; that is, in formula (I),  $R^1$  is according to formula (IIb). Such a dimer can be represented by formula

5 (IIb):

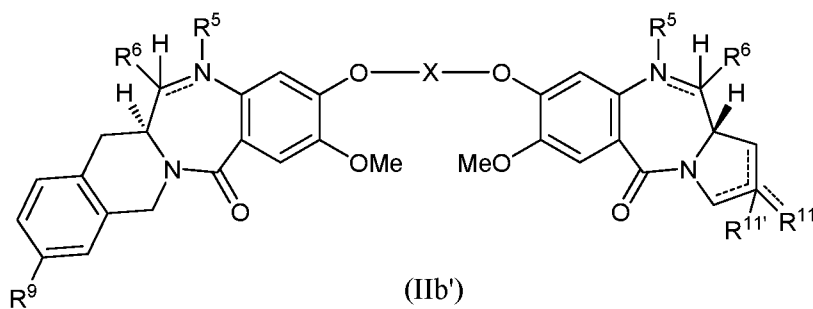


wherein

$R^2, R^3, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{10}, R^{11}, R^{11'}$ , the double line  $\equiv$ , the dotted lines in ring C, and X are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section

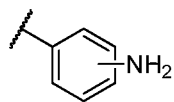
10 hereinabove in respect of formula (I).

A preferred THIQ-PBD dimer according to formula (IIb), is represented by formula (IIb'):



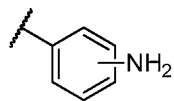
wherein

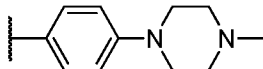
$R^9$  is H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



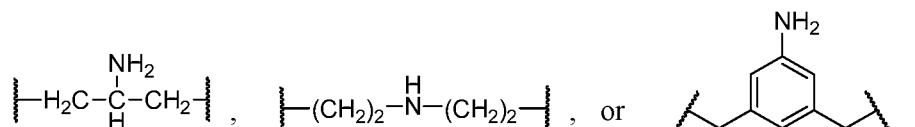
(especially the *para*- isomer);

$R^{11}$  is H,  $=CH_2$ ,  $CH=CHMe$ ,  $=CHMe$ ,  $C\equiv CCH_2NH_2$ ,

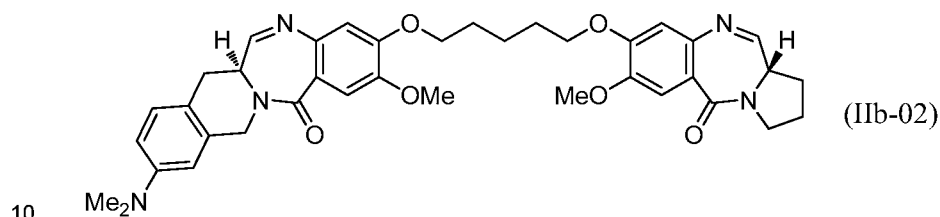
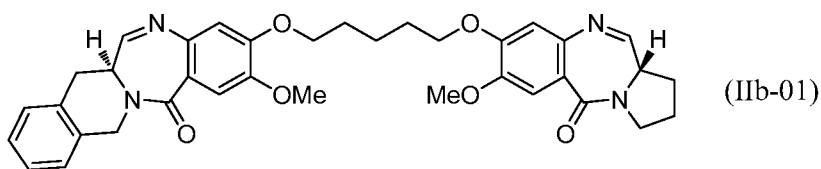


(especially the *para*- isomer), or ; and

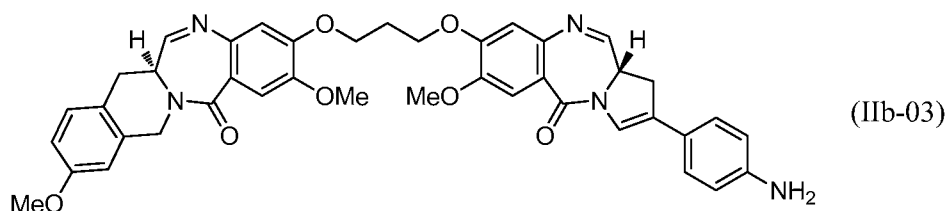
5 X is  $\text{---}[(CH_2)_3]\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}[(CH_2)_5]\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}[(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2]\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}CH_2C(=O)NH(CH_2)_2\text{---}$ ,



Specific examples of THIQ-PBD dimers include:



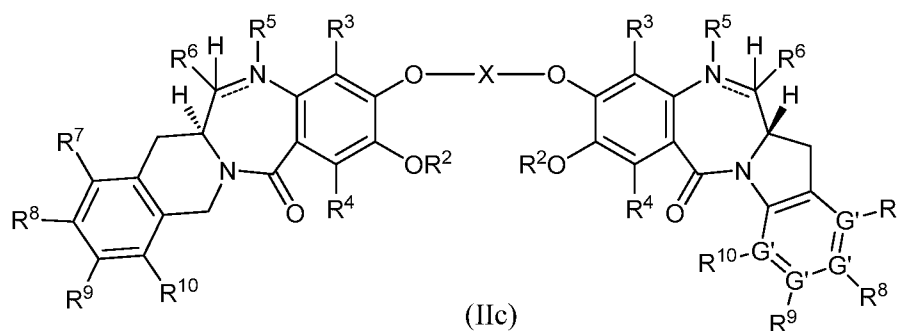
10 , and



An especially preferred THIQ-PBD dimer is (IIb-03).

15 In another embodiment, a dimer of this invention comprises a benzodiazepine unit having a THIQ ring system and a benzodiazepine unit having an azaindoline (AZI) ring system ("THIQ-AZI dimer"). Such a dimer can be represented by formula (IIc):





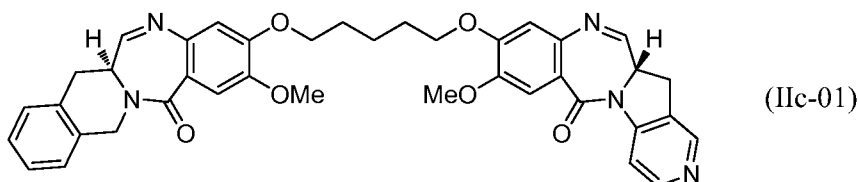
where

one G' is N and the others are C;

R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, the double line  $\equiv$ , and X are as defined in the BRIEF

5 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove in respect of formula (I).

An example of a THIQ-AZI dimer is compound (IIc-01):



## CONJUGATES

### General

10 Dimers of this invention can be used as therapeutic agents *per se*, but preferably are used as conjugates with a targeting moiety that specifically or preferentially binds to a chemical entity on a cancer cell. Preferably, the targeting moiety is an antibody or antigen binding portion thereof and the chemical entity is a tumor associated antigen.

Thus, another embodiment of this invention is a conjugate comprising dimer of  
15 this invention and a ligand, represented by formula (II)



where Z is a ligand, D is a dimer of this invention, and  $-(X^D)_a(C)(X^Z)_b-$  are collectively referred to as a "linker moiety" or "linker" because they link Z and D. Within the linker, C is a cleavable group designed to be cleaved at or near the site of intended biological action of  
20 dimer D; X<sup>D</sup> and X<sup>Z</sup> are referred to as spacer moieties (or "spacers") because they space apart D and C and C and Z, respectively; subscripts a, b, and c are independently 0 or 1 (that is, the

presence of  $X^D$ ,  $X^Z$  and C are optional). Subscript m is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 (preferably 1, 2, 3, or 4). D,  $X^D$ , C,  $X^Z$  and Z are more fully described hereinbelow.

Ligand Z – for example an antibody – performs a targeting function. By binding to a target tissue or cell where its antigen or receptor is located, ligand Z directs the conjugate there. (When ligand Z is an antibody, the conjugate is sometimes referred to as antibody-  
5 drug conjugate (ADC) or an immunoconjugate. Preferably, the target tissue or cell is a cancer tissue or cell and the antigen or receptor is a tumor-associated antigen, that is, an antigen that is uniquely expressed by cancerous cells or is overexpressed by cancer cells, compared to non-cancerous cells. Cleavage of group C at the target tissue or cell releases dimer D to  
10 exert its cytotoxic effect locally. In some instances, the conjugate is internalized into a target cell by endocytosis and cleavage takes place within the target cell. In this manner, precise delivery of dimer D is achieved at the site of intended action, reducing the dosage needed. Also, dimer D is normally biologically inactive (or significantly less active) in its conjugated state, thereby reducing undesired toxicity against non-target tissue or cells. As anticancer  
15 drugs are often highly toxic to cells in general, this is an important consideration.

As reflected by the subscript m, each molecule of ligand Z can conjugate with more than one dimer D, depending on the number of sites ligand Z has available for conjugation and the experimental conditions employed. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that, while each individual molecule of ligand Z is conjugated to an integer number of dimers D, a  
20 preparation of the conjugate may analyze for a non-integer ratio of dimers D to ligand Z, reflecting a statistical average. This ratio is referred to as the substitution ratio (SR) or, synonymously, the drug-antibody ratio (DAR).

#### *Ligand Z*

Preferably, ligand Z is an antibody. For convenience and brevity and not by way  
25 of limitation, the detailed subsequent discussion herein about the conjugation of ligand Z is written in the context of its being an antibody, but those skilled in the art will understand that other types of ligand Z can be conjugated, *mutatis mutandis*. For example, conjugates with folic acid as the ligand can target cells having the folate receptor on their surfaces (Leamon *et al.*, Cancer Res. **2008**, 68 (23), 9839). For the same reason, the detailed discussion below is  
30 primarily written in terms of a 1:1 ratio of antibody Z to analog D ( $m = 1$ ).

Preferably, ligand Z is an antibody against a tumor associated antigen, allowing the selective targeting of cancer cells. Examples of such antigens include: mesothelin,

prostate specific membrane antigen (PSMA), CD19, CD22, CD30, CD70, B7H3, B7H4 (also known as O8E), protein tyrosine kinase 7 (PTK7), glypican-3, RG1, fucosyl-GM1, CTLA-4, and CD44. The antibody can be animal (*e.g.*, murine), chimeric, humanized, or, preferably, human. The antibody preferably is monoclonal, especially a monoclonal human antibody.

5 The preparation of human monoclonal antibodies against some of the aforementioned antigens is disclosed in Korman *et al.*, US 8,609,816 B2 (2013; B7H4, also known as O8E; in particular antibodies 2A7, 1G11, and 2F9); Rao-Naik *et al.*, 8,097,703 B2 (2012; CD19; in particular antibodies 5G7, 13F1, 46E8, 21D4, 21D4a, 47G4, 27F3, and 3C10); King *et al.*, US 8,481,683 B2 (2013; CD22; in particular antibodies 12C5, 19A3, 16F7, and 23C6); Keler  
10 *et al.*, US 7,387,776 B2 (2008; CD30; in particular antibodies 5F11, 2H9, and 17G1); Terrett *et al.*, US 8,124,738 B2 (2012; CD70; in particular antibodies 2H5, 10B4, 8B5, 18E7, and 69A7); Korman *et al.*, US 6,984,720 B1 (2006; CTLA-4; in particular antibodies 10D1, 4B6, and 1E2); Vistica *et al.*, US 8,383,118 B2 (2013, fucosyl-GM1, in particular antibodies 5B1, 5B1a, 7D4, 7E4, 13B8, and 18D5) Korman *et al.*, US 8,008,449 B2 (2011; PD-1; in  
15 particular antibodies 17D8, 2D3, 4H1, 5C4, 4A11, 7D3, and 5F4); Huang *et al.*, US 2009/0297438 A1 (2009; PSMA. in particular antibodies 1C3, 2A10, 2F5, 2C6); Cardarelli *et al.*, US 7,875,278 B2 (2011; PSMA; in particular antibodies 4A3, 7F12, 8C12, 8A11, 16F9, 2A10, 2C6, 2F5, and 1C3); Terrett *et al.*, US 8,222,375 B2 (2012; PTK7; in particular antibodies 3G8, 4D5, 12C6, 12C6a, and 7C8); Terrett *et al.*, US 8,680,247 B2 (2014;  
20 glypican-3; in particular antibodies 4A6, 11E7, and 16D10); Harkins *et al.*, US 7,335,748 B2(2008; RG1; in particular antibodies A, B, C, and D); Terrett *et al.*, US 8,268,970 B2 (2012; mesothelin; in particular antibodies 3C10, 6A4, and 7B1); Xu *et al.*, US 2010/0092484 A1 (2010; CD44; in particular antibodies 14G9.B8.B4, 2D1.A3.D12, and 1A9.A6.B9); Deshpande *et al.*, US 8,258,266 B2 (2012; IP10; in particular antibodies 1D4,  
25 1E1, 2G1, 3C4, 6A5, 6A8, 7C10, 8F6, 10A12, 10A12S, and 13C4); Kuhne *et al.*, US 8,450,464 B2 (2013; CXCR4; in particular antibodies F7, F9, D1, and E2); and Korman *et al.*, US 7,943,743 B2 (2011; PD-L1; in particular antibodies 3G10, 12A4, 10A5, 5F8, 10H10, 1B12, 7H1, 11E6, 12B7, and 13G4); the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. Each of the aforementioned antibodies can be used in an ADC with d dimer of  
30 this invention.

Ligand Z can also be an antibody fragment or antibody mimetic, such as an affibody, a domain antibody (dAb), a nanobody, a unibody, a DARPin, an anticalin, a versabody, a duocalin, a lipocalin, or an avimer.

Any one of several different reactive groups on ligand Z can be a conjugation site, including  $\epsilon$ -amino groups in lysine residues, pendant carbohydrate moieties, carboxylic acid groups, disulfide groups, and thiol groups. Each type of reactive group represents a trade-off, having some advantages and some disadvantages. For reviews on antibody reactive groups suitable for conjugation, see, e.g., Garnett, *Adv. Drug Delivery Rev.* 53 (2001), 171-216 and Dubowchik and Walker, *Pharmacology & Therapeutics* 83 (1999), 67-123, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

In one embodiment, ligand Z is conjugated via a lysine  $\epsilon$ -amino group. Most antibodies have multiple lysine  $\epsilon$ -amino groups, which can be conjugated via amide, urea, thiourea, or carbamate bonds using techniques known in the art. However, it is difficult to control which and how many  $\epsilon$ -amino groups react, leading to potential batch-to-batch variability in conjugate preparations. Also, conjugation may cause neutralization of a protonated  $\epsilon$ -amino group important for maintaining the antibody's native conformation or may take place at a lysine near or at the antigen binding site, neither being a desirable occurrence.

In another embodiment, ligand Z can be conjugated via a carbohydrate side chain, as many antibodies are glycosylated. The carbohydrate side chain can be oxidized with periodate to generate aldehyde groups, which in turn can be reacted with amines to form an imine group, such as in a semicarbazone, oxime, or hydrazone. If desired, the imine group can be converted to a more stable amine group by reduction with sodium cyanoborohydride. For additional disclosures on conjugation via carbohydrate side chains, see, e.g., Rodwell *et al.*, *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA* 83, 2632-2636 (1986); the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference. As with lysine  $\epsilon$ -amino groups, there are concerns regarding reproducibility of the location of the conjugation site(s) and stoichiometry.

In yet another embodiment, ligand Z can be conjugated via a carboxylic acid group. In one embodiment, a terminal carboxylic acid group is functionalized to generate a carbonyldiimidazole, which is then reacted with an aldehyde-bearing conjugation moiety. See Fisch *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chemistry* **1992**, 3, 147-153.

In yet another embodiment, antibody Z can be conjugated via a disulfide group bridging a cysteine residue on antibody Z and a sulfur on the other portion of the conjugate. Some antibodies lack free thiol (sulfhydryl) groups but have disulfide groups, for example in the hinge region. In such case, free thiol groups can be generated by reduction of native  
5 disulfide groups. The thiol groups so generated can then be used for conjugation. See, e.g., Packard *et al.*, *Biochemistry* **1986**, 25, 3548-3552; King *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* 54, 6176-6185 (1994); and Doronina *et al.*, *Nature Biotechnol.* 21(7), 778-784 (2003); the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. Again, there are concerns regarding conjugation site location and stoichiometry and the possible disruption of antibody native conformation.

10 A number of methods are known for introducing free thiol groups into antibodies without breaking native disulfide bonds, which methods can be practiced with a ligand Z of this invention. Depending on the method employed, it may be possible to introduce a predictable number of free sulfhydryls at predetermined locations. In one approach, mutated antibodies are prepared in which a cysteine is substituted for another amino acid. See, for  
15 example, Eigenbrot *et al.*, US 7,521,541 B2 (2009); Chilkoti *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.* **1994**, 5, 504-507; Urnovitz *et al.*, US 4,698,420 (1987); Stimmel *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 275 (39), 30445-30450 (2000); Bam *et al.*, US 7,311,902 B2 (2007); Kuan *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269 (10), 7610-7618 (1994); Poon *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 270 (15), 8571-8577 (1995). In another approach, an extra cysteine is added to the C-terminus. See, e.g. Cumber *et al.*, *J.*  
20 *Immunol.*, 149, 120-126 (1992); King *et al.*, *Cancer Res.*, 54, 6176-6185 (1994); Li *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 13, 985-995 (2002); Yang *et al.*, *Protein Engineering*, 16, 761-770 (2003); and Olafson *et al.*, *Protein Engineering Design & Selection*, 17, 21-27 (2004). A preferred method for introducing free cysteines is that taught by Liu *et al.*, WO 2009/026274 A1, in which a cysteine bearing amino acid sequence is added to the C-terminus of the heavy  
25 chain of an antibody. This method introduces a known number of cysteine residues (one per heavy chain) at a known location away from the antigen binding site. The disclosures of the documents cited in this paragraph are all incorporated herein by reference.

In yet another embodiment, lysine  $\epsilon$ -amino groups can be modified with reagents such as 2-iminothiolane or N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio)propionate (SPDP), converting  
30 an  $\epsilon$ -amino group into a thiol or disulfide group – creating a cysteine surrogate, as it were. However, this method suffers from the same conjugation location and stoichiometry limitations associated with  $\epsilon$ -amino groups proper.

*Linker Components*

As noted above, the linker portion of a conjugate of this invention comprises up to three elements: a cleavable group C and optional spacers  $X^Z$  and  $X^D$ .

Cleavable group C is a group cleavable under physiological conditions, preferably  
5 selected such that it is relatively stable while the conjugate is in general circulation in the blood plasma, but is readily cleaved once the conjugate reaches its site of intended action, that is, near, at, or within the target cell. Preferably, the conjugate is internalized by a target cell upon binding of antibody Z to an antigen displayed on the surface of the target cell. Subsequently, cleavage of group C occurs in a vesicular body of the target cell (an early  
10 endosome, a late endosome, or, especially, a lysosome).

In one embodiment, group C is a pH sensitive group. The pH in blood plasma is slightly above neutral, while the pH inside a lysosome is acidic, circa 5. Thus, a group C whose cleavage is acid catalyzed will cleave at a rate several orders of magnitude faster inside a lysosome than in the blood plasma rate. Examples of suitable acid-sensitive groups  
15 include cis-aconityl amides and hydrazones, as described in Shen *et al.*, US 4,631,190 (1986); Shen *et al.*, US 5,144,011 (1992); Shen *et al.*, *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 102, 1048-1054 (1981) and Yang *et al.*, *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci (USA)*, 85, 1189-1193 (1988); the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

In another embodiment, group C is a disulfide. Disulfides can be cleaved by a  
20 thiol-disulfide exchange mechanism, at a rate dependent on the ambient thiol concentration. As the intracellular concentration of glutathione and other thiols is higher than their serum concentrations, the cleavage rate of a disulfide will be higher intracellularly. Further, the rate of thiol-disulfide exchange can be modulated by adjustment of the steric and electronic characteristics of the disulfide (e.g., an alkyl-aryl disulfide versus an alkyl-alkyl disulfide;  
25 substitution on the aryl ring, etc.), enabling the design of disulfide linkages that have enhanced serum stability or a particular cleavage rate. For additional disclosures relating to disulfide cleavable groups in conjugates, see, e.g., Thorpe *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* 48, 6396-6403 (1988); Santi *et al.*, US 7,541,530 B2 (2009); Ng *et al.*, US 6,989,452 B2 (2006); Ng *et al.*, WO 2002/096910 A1; Boyd *et al.*, US 7,691,962 B2; and Sufi *et al.*, US 2010/0145036 A1;  
30 the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

A preferred cleavable group is a peptide that is cleaved selectively by a protease inside the target cell, as opposed to by a protease in the serum. Typically, a cleavable peptide group comprises from 1 to 20 amino acids, preferably from 1 to 6 amino acids, more preferably from 1 to 3 amino acids. The amino acid(s) can be natural and/or non-natural  $\alpha$ -amino acids. Natural amino acids are those encoded by the genetic code, as well as amino acids derived therefrom, *e.g.*, hydroxyproline,  $\gamma$ -carboxyglutamate, citrulline, and O-phosphoserine. In this context, the term "amino acid" also includes amino acid analogs and mimetics. Analogs are compounds having the same general  $H_2N(R)CHCO_2H$  structure of a natural amino acid, except that the R group is not one found among the natural amino acids. Examples of analogs include homoserine, norleucine, methionine-sulfoxide, and methionine methyl sulfonium. An amino acid mimetic is a compound that has a structure different from the general chemical structure of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid but functions in a manner similar to one. The amino acid can be of the "L" stereochemistry of the genetically encoded amino acids, as well as of the enantiomeric "D" stereochemistry.

Preferably, group C contains an amino acid sequence that is a cleavage recognition sequence for a protease. Many cleavage recognition sequences are known in the art. *See, e.g.*, Matayoshi *et al. Science* 247: 954 (1990); Dunn *et al. Meth. Enzymol.* 241: 254 (1994); Seidah *et al. Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 175 (1994); Thornberry, *Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 615 (1994); Weber *et al. Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 595 (1994); Smith *et al. Meth. Enzymol.* 244: 412 (1994); and Bouvier *et al. Meth. Enzymol.* 248: 614 (1995); the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

For conjugates that are not intended to be internalized by a cell, a group C can be chosen such that it is cleaved by a protease present in the extracellular matrix in the vicinity of the target tissue, *e.g.*, a protease released by nearby dying cells or a tumor-associated protease. Exemplary extracellular tumor-associated proteases are matrix metalloproteases (MMP), thimet oligopeptidase (TOP) and CD10.

For conjugates that are designed to be internalized by a cell, group C preferably comprises an amino acid sequence selected for cleavage by an endosomal or lysosomal protease, especially the latter. Non-limiting examples of such proteases include cathepsins B, C, D, H, L and S, especially cathepsin B. Cathepsin B preferentially cleaves peptides at a sequence  $-AA^2-AA^1-$  where  $AA^1$  is a basic or strongly hydrogen bonding amino acid (such as lysine, arginine, or citrulline) and  $AA^2$  is a hydrophobic amino acid (such as phenylalanine,

valine, alanine, leucine, or isoleucine), for example Val-Cit (where Cit denotes citrulline) or Val-Lys. (Herein, amino acid sequences are written in the N-to-C direction, as in  $H_2N-AA^2-AA^1-CO_2H$ , unless the context clearly indicates otherwise.) Lys-Val-Ala, Asp-Val-Ala, Val-Ala, Lys-Val-Cit, and Asp-Val-Cit are also substrate peptide motifs for cathpsin B, although in some instances the cleavage rate may be slower. For additional information regarding cathepsin-cleavable groups, see Dubowchik *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **8**, 3341-3346 (1998); Dubowchik *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **8** 3347-3352 (1998); and Dubowchik *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.* **13**, 855-869 (2002); the disclosures of which are incorporated by reference. Another enzyme that can be utilized for cleaving peptidyl linkers is legumain, a lysosomal cysteine protease that preferentially cleaves at Ala-Ala-Asn.

In one embodiment, Group C is a peptide comprising a two-amino acid sequence  $-AA^2-AA^1-$  wherein  $AA^1$  is lysine, arginine, or citrulline and  $AA^2$  is phenylalanine, valine, alanine, leucine or isoleucine. In another embodiment, C consists of a sequence of one to three amino acids, selected from the group consisting of Val-Cit, Ala-Val, Val-Ala-Val, Lys-Lys, Ala-Asn-Val, Val-Leu-Lys, Cit-Cit, Val-Lys, Ala-Ala-Asn, Lys, Cit, Ser, and Glu.

The preparation and design of cleavable groups C consisting of a single amino acid is disclosed in Chen *et al.*, US 8,664,407 B2 (2014), the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

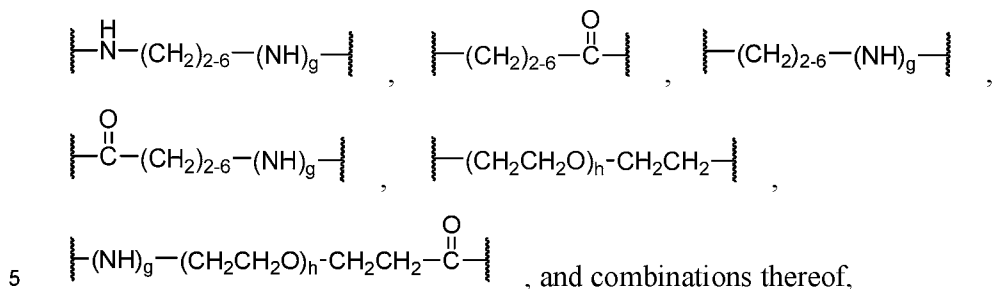
Group C can also be a photocleavable one, for example a nitrobenzyl ether that is cleaved upon exposure to light.

Group C can be bonded directly to antibody Z or analog D; *i.e.* spacers  $X^Z$  and  $X^D$ , as the case may be, can be absent. For example, if group C is a disulfide, one of the two sulfurs can be a cysteine residue or its surrogate on antibody Z. Or, group C can be a hydrazone bonded to an aldehyde on a carbohydrate side chain of the antibody. Or, group C can be a peptide bond formed with a lysine  $\epsilon$ -amino group of antibody Z. In a preferred embodiment, dimer D is directly bonded to group C via a peptidyl bond to a carboxyl or amine group in dimer D.

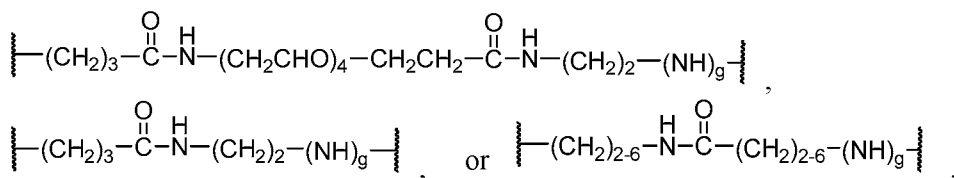
When present, spacer  $X^Z$  provides spatial separation between group C and antibody Z, lest the former sterically interfere with antigen binding by latter or the latter sterically interfere with cleavage of the former. Further, spacer  $X^Z$  can be used to confer increased solubility or decreased aggregation properties to conjugates. A spacer  $X^Z$  can



comprise one or more modular segments, which can be assembled in any number of combinations. Examples of suitable segments for a spacer  $X^Z$  are:



where the subscript  $g$  is 0 or 1 and the subscript  $h$  is 1 to 24, preferably 2 to 4. These segments can be combined, such as illustrated below:



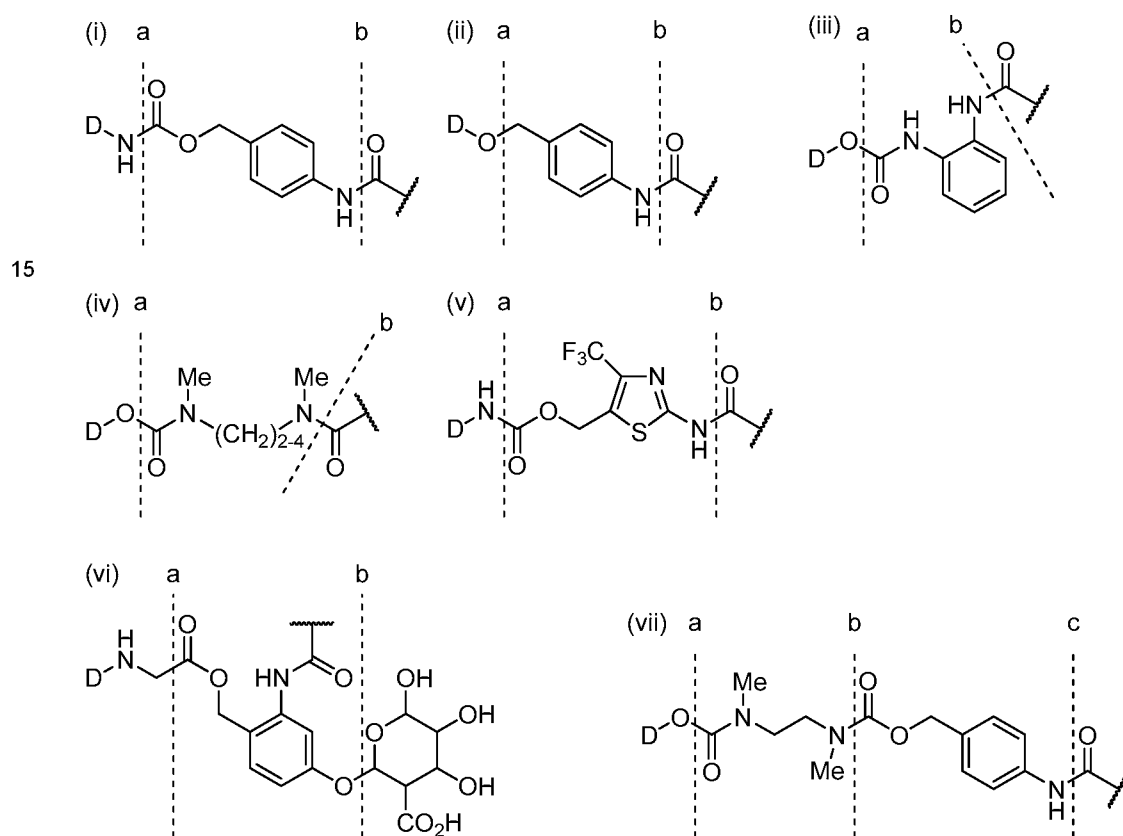
Spacer  $X^D$ , if present, provides spatial separation between group C and dimer D, lest the latter interfere sterically or electronically with cleavage of the former. Spacer  $X^D$  also can serve to introduce additional molecular mass and chemical functionality into a conjugate. Generally, the additional mass and functionality will affect the serum half-life and other properties of the conjugate. Thus, through judicious selection of spacer groups, the serum half-life of a conjugate can be modulated. Spacer  $X^D$  also can be assembled from modular segments, as described above in the context of spacer  $X^Z$ .

Spacers  $X^Z$  and/or  $X^D$ , where present, preferably provide a linear separation of from 4 to 25 atoms, more preferably from 4 to 20 atoms, between Z and C or D and C, respectively.

The linker can perform other functions in addition to covalently linking the antibody and the drug. For instance, the linker can contain poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG) groups, which enhance solubility either during the performance the conjugation chemistry or in the final ADC product. Where a PEG group is present, it may be incorporated into either spacer  $X^Z$  of  $X^D$ , or both. The number of repeat units in a PEG group can be from 2 to 20, preferably between 4 and 10.

Either spacer  $X^Z$  or  $X^D$ , or both, can comprise a self-immolating moiety. A self-immolating moiety is a moiety that (1) is bonded to group C and either antibody Z or dimer D and (2) has a structure such that cleavage from group C initiates a reaction sequence resulting in the self-immolating moiety disbonding itself from antibody Z or dimer D, as the case may be. In other words, reaction at a site distal from antibody Z or dimer D (cleavage from group C) causes the  $X^Z$ -Z or the  $X^D$ -D bond to rupture as well. The presence of a self-immolating moiety is desirable in the case of spacer  $X^D$  because, if, after cleavage of the conjugate, spacer  $X^D$  or a portion thereof were to remain attached to dimer D, the biological activity of the latter may be impaired. The use of a self-immolating moiety is especially desirable where cleavable group C is a polypeptide, in which instance the self-immolating moiety typically is located adjacent thereto.

Exemplary self-immolating moieties (i)-(v) bonded to a hydroxyl or amino group on a partner molecule D are shown below:



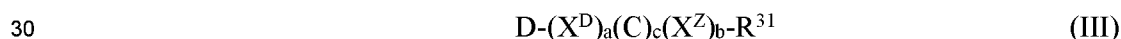
The self-immolating moiety is the structure between dotted lines a and b (or dotted lines b and c), with adjacent structural features shown to provide context. Self-

immolating moieties (i) and (v) are bonded to a dimer D-NH<sub>2</sub> (i.e., dimer D is conjugated via an amino group), while self-immolating moieties (ii), (iii), and (iv) are bonded to a dimer D-OH (i.e., dimer D is conjugated via a hydroxyl or carboxyl group). Cleavage of the amide bond at dotted line b (*e.g.*, by a peptidase) releases the amide nitrogen as an amine nitrogen, initiating a reaction sequence that results in the cleavage of the bond at dotted line a and the consequent release of D-OH or D-NH<sub>2</sub>, as the case may be. Alternatively, the cleavage that triggers the self-immolating reaction can be by a different type of enzyme, for example by a β-glucuronidase, as in the instance of structure (vi). In some instances, self-immolating groups can be used in tandem, as shown by structure (vii). In such case, cleavage at dotted line c triggers self-immolation of the moiety between dotted lines b and c by a 1,6-elimination reaction, followed by self-immolation of the moiety between dotted lines a and b by a cyclization-elimination reaction. For additional disclosures regarding self-immolating moieties, see Carl *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.*, 24 (3), 479-480 (1981); Carl *et al.*, WO 81/01145 (1981); Dubowchik *et al.*, *Pharmacology & Therapeutics*, **83**, 67-123 (1999); Firestone *et al.*, US 6,214,345 B1 (2001); Toki *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.* **67**, 1866-1872 (2002); Doronina *et al.*, *Nature Biotechnology* **21** (7), 778-784 (2003) (*erratum*, p. 941); Boyd *et al.*, US 7,691,962 B2; Boyd *et al.*, US 2008/0279868 A1; Sufi *et al.*, WO 2008/083312 A2; Feng, US 7,375,078 B2; Jeffrey *et al.*, US 8039,273; and Senter *et al.*, US 2003/0096743 A1; the disclosures of which are incorporated by reference. A preferred self-immolating group is *p*-aminobenzyl oxycarbonyl (PABC) group, as shown in structure (i).

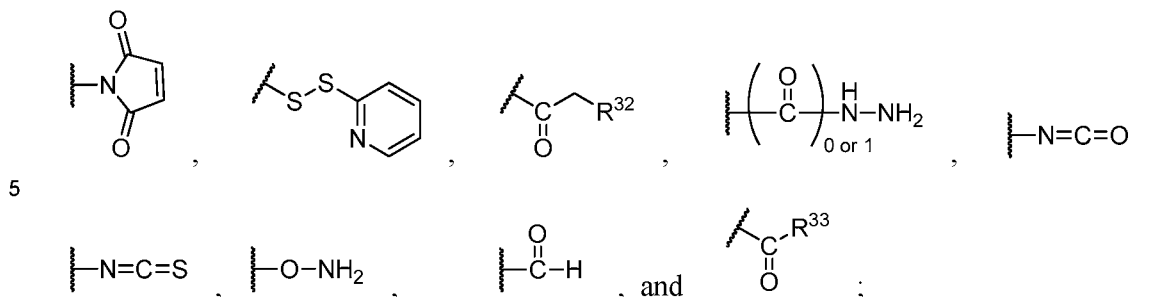
In another embodiment, an antibody targeting moiety and the dimer D are linked by a non-cleavable linker, *i.e.*, element C is absent. Degradation of the antibody eventually reduces the linker to a small appended moiety that does not interfere with the biological activity of dimer D.

## 25 Conjugation Techniques

Conjugates of this invention preferably are made by first preparing a compound comprising an analog of this invention (represented by D in the formulae below) and linker (X<sup>D</sup>)<sub>a</sub>(C)<sub>c</sub>(X<sup>Z</sup>)<sub>b</sub> (where X<sup>D</sup>, C, X<sup>Z</sup>, a, b, and c are as defined for formula (II)) to form an analog-linker composition represented by formula (III):

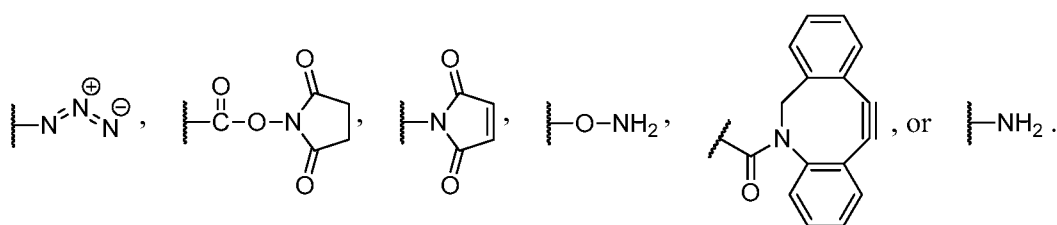


where  $R^{31}$  is a functional group suitable for reacting with a complementary functional group on antibody Z to form the conjugate. Examples of suitable groups  $R^{31}$  include amino, azide, cyclooctyne,



where  $R^{32}$  is Cl, Br, F, mesylate, or tosylate and  $R^{33}$  is Cl, Br, I, F, OH, -O-N-succinimidyl, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, or -O-tetrafluorophenyl. Chemistry generally usable for the preparation of suitable moieties  $\text{D}-(\text{X}^{\text{D}})_a\text{C}(\text{X}^{\text{Z}})_b-\text{R}^{31}$  is disclosed in Ng *et al.*,  
 10 US 7,087,600 B2 (2006); Ng *et al.*, US 6,989,452 B2 (2006); Ng *et al.*, US 7,129,261 B2 (2006); Ng *et al.*, WO 02/096910 A1; Boyd *et al.*, US 7,691,962 B2; Chen *et al.*, US 7,517,903 B2 (2009); Gangwar *et al.*, US 7,714,016 B2 (2010); Boyd *et al.*, US 2008/0279868 A1; Gangwar *et al.*, US 7,847,105 B2 (2010); Gangwar *et al.*, US 7,968,586 B2 (2011); Sufi *et al.*, US 2010/0145036 A1; and Chen *et al.*, US 2010/0113476 A1; the  
 15 disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Preferably reactive functional group  $-\text{R}^{31}$  is  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ,  $-\text{SH}$ , maleimido, cyclooctyne, azido ( $-\text{N}_3$ ), hydroxylamino ( $-\text{ONH}_2$ ) or N-hydroxysuccinimido. Especially preferred functional groups  $-\text{R}^{31}$  are:



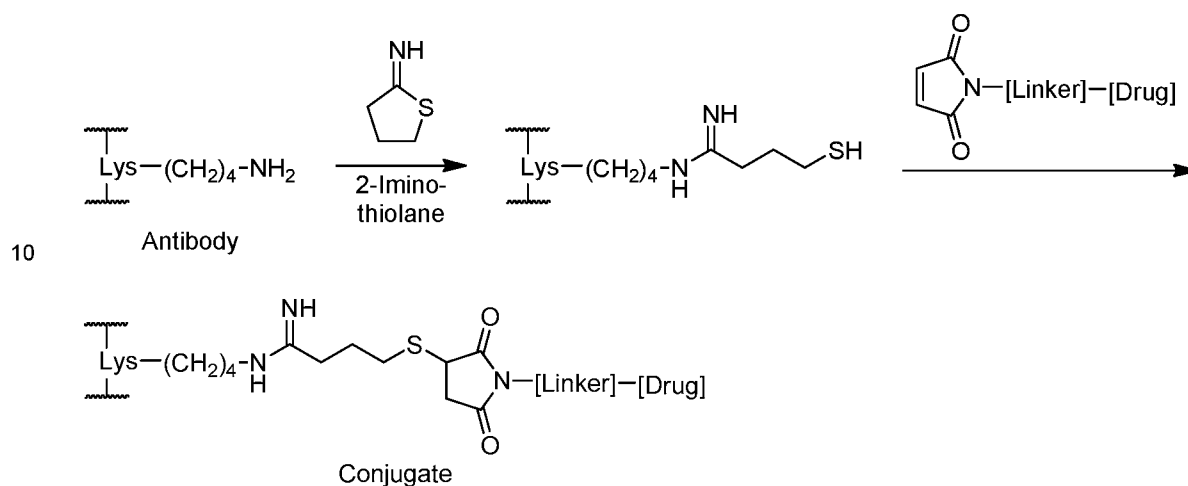
20 An  $-\text{OH}$  group can be esterified with a carboxy group on the antibody, for example, on an aspartic or glutamic acid side chain.

A  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$  group can be esterified with a  $-\text{OH}$  group or amidated with an amino group (for example on a lysine side chain) on the antibody.

An N-hydroxysuccinimide group is functionally an activated carboxyl group and can conveniently be amidated by reaction with an amino group (*e.g.*, from lysine).

A maleimide group can be conjugated with an -SH group on the antibody (*e.g.*, from cysteine or from the chemical modification of the antibody to introduce a sulfhydryl functionality), in a Michael addition reaction.

Various techniques can be introducing an -SH group into an antibody. In a preferred one, an  $\epsilon$ -amino group in the side chain of a lysine residue in the antibody is reacted with 2-iminothiolane to introduce a free thiol (-SH) group. The thiol group can react with a maleimide or other nucleophile acceptor group to effect conjugation:



Typically, a thiolation level of two to three thiols per antibody is achieved. For a representative procedure, see Cong *et al.* 2014, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference. Thus, in one embodiment, an antibody for conjugation to a dimer of this invention has one or more lysine residues (preferably two or three) modified by reaction with iminothiolane.

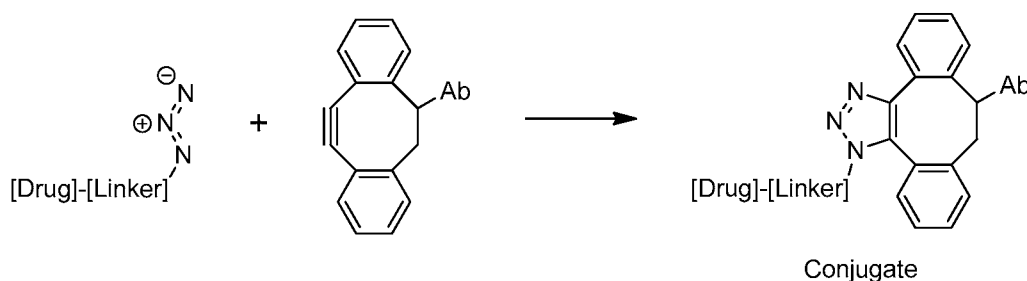
An -SH group can also be used for conjugation where the antibody has been modified to introduce a maleimide group thereto, in a Michael addition reaction that is the “mirror image” of that described above. Antibodies can be modified to have maleimide groups with N-succinimidyl 4-(maleimidomethyl)-cyclohexanecarboxylate (SMCC) or its sulfonated variant sulfo-SMCC, both reagents being available from Sigma-Aldrich.

An alternative conjugation technique employs copper-free “click chemistry,” in which an azide group adds across the strained alkyne bond of a cyclooctyne to form an 1,2,3-

triazole ring. See, e.g., Agard *et al.*, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* **2004**, 126, 15046; Best, *Biochemistry* **2009**, 48, 6571, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The azide can be located on the antibody and the cyclooctyne on the drug moiety, or vice-versa. A preferred cyclooctyne group is dibenzocyclooctyne (DIBO). Various reagents

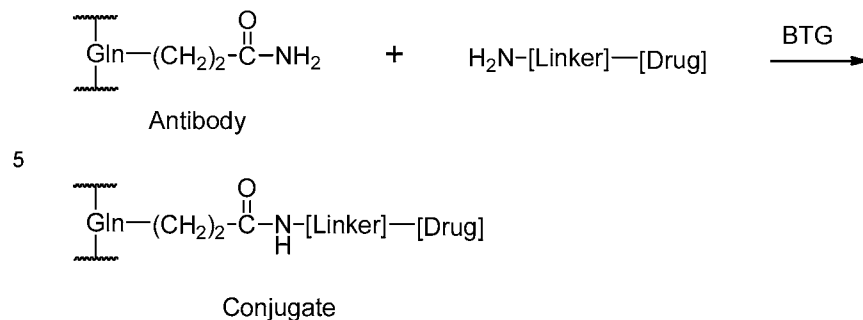
- 5 having a DIBO group are available from Invitrogen/Molecular Probes, Eugene, Oregon. The reaction below illustrates click chemistry conjugation for the instance in which the DIBO group is attached to the antibody (Ab):



- Yet another conjugation technique involves introducing a non-natural amino acid
- 10 into an antibody, with the non-natural amino acid providing a functionality for conjugation with a reactive functional group in the drug moiety. For instance, the non-natural amino acid p-acetylphenylalanine can be incorporated into an antibody or other polypeptide, as taught in Tian *et al.*, WO 2008/030612 A2 (2008). The ketone group in p-acetylphenylalanine can be a conjugation site via the formation of an oxime with a hydroxylamino group on the linker-
- 15 drug moiety. Alternatively, the non-natural amino acid p-azidophenylalanine can be incorporated into an antibody to provide an azide functional group for conjugation via click chemistry, as discussed above. Non-natural amino acids can also be incorporated into an antibody or other polypeptide using cell-free methods, as taught in Goerke *et al.*, US 2010/0093024 A1 (2010) and Goerke *et al.*, *Biotechnol. Bioeng.* **2009**, 102 (2), 400-416.
- 20 The foregoing disclosures are incorporated herein by reference. Thus, in one embodiment, an antibody that is used for making a conjugate with a dimer of this invention has one or more amino acids replaced by a non-natural amino acid, which preferably is p-acetylphenylalanine or p-azidophenylalanine, more preferably p-acetylphenylalanine.

- Still another conjugation technique uses the enzyme transglutaminase (preferably
- 25 bacterial transglutaminase or BTG), per Jeger *et al.*, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **2010**, 49, 9995. BTG forms an amide bond between the side chain carboxamide of a glutamine (the amine acceptor) and an alkyleneamino group (the amine donor), which can be, for example, the ε-

amino group of a lysine or a 5-amino-n-pentyl group. In a typical conjugation reaction, the glutamine residue is located on the antibody, while the alkyleneamino group is located on the linker-drug moiety, as shown below:



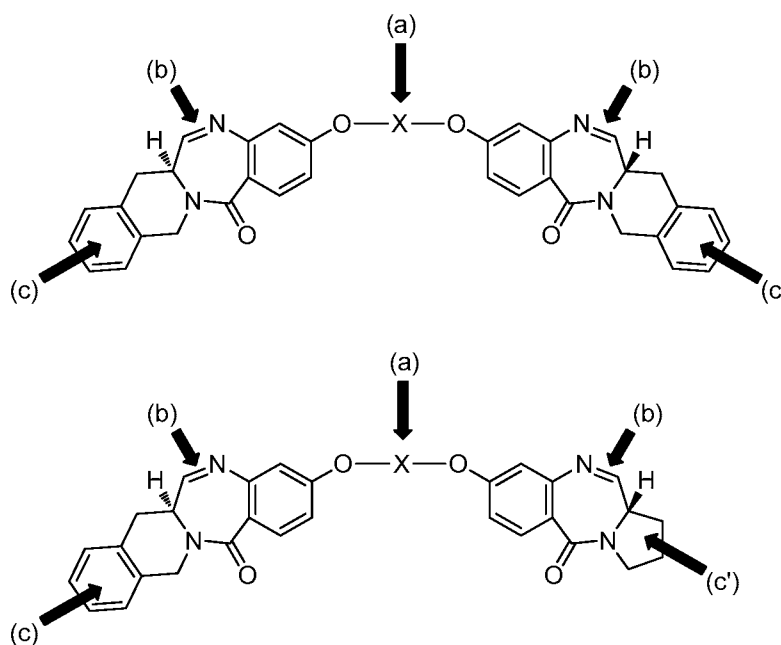
The positioning of a glutamine residue on a polypeptide chain has a large effect on its susceptibility to BTG mediated transamidation. None of the glutamine residues on an antibody are normally BTG substrates. However, if the antibody is deglycosylated – the glycosylation site being asparagine 297 (N297) – nearby glutamine 295 (Q295) is rendered BTG susceptible. An antibody can be deglycosylated enzymatically by treatment with PNGase F (Peptide-N-Glycosidase F). Alternatively, an antibody can be synthesized glycoside free by introducing an N297A mutation in the constant region, to eliminate the N297 glycosylation site. Further, it has been shown that an N297Q substitution in an antibody not only eliminates glycosylation, but also introduces a second glutamine residue (at position 297) that too is an amine acceptor. Thus, in one embodiment, an antibody that is conjugated to a dimer of this invention is deglycosylated. In another embodiment, the antibody has an N297Q substitution. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that deglycosylation by post-synthesis modification or by introducing an N297A mutation generates two BTG-reactive glutamine residues per antibody (one per heavy chain, at position 295), while an antibody with an N297Q substitution will have four BTG-reactive glutamine residues (two per heavy chain, at positions 295 and 297).

Conjugation can also be effected using the enzyme Sortase A, as taught in Levary *et al.*, *PLoS One* **2011**, 6(4), e18342; Proft, *Biotechnol. Lett.* **2010**, 32, 1-10; Ploegh *et al.*, WO 2010/087994 A2 (2010); and Mao *et al.*, WO 2005/051976 A2 (2005). The Sortase A recognition motif (typically LPXTG, where X is any natural amino acid) may be located on the ligand Z and the nucleophilic acceptor motif (typically GGG) may be the group R<sup>31</sup> in formula (III), or vice-versa.

*Dimer-Linker Compounds*

Generally, an ADC of a dimer of this invention comprises a linker attached to a functional group on the dimer, which linker is attached to the antibody. Reflecting the diversity of conjugation techniques available, the dimers of this invention can be elaborated into many different dimer-linker compounds suitable for conjugation to an antibody.

Generally, there are three different modes for attachment of the linker to a dimer of this invention, as illustrated in the figures below (with variables and optional substituents in the rings not shown for simplicity):



10

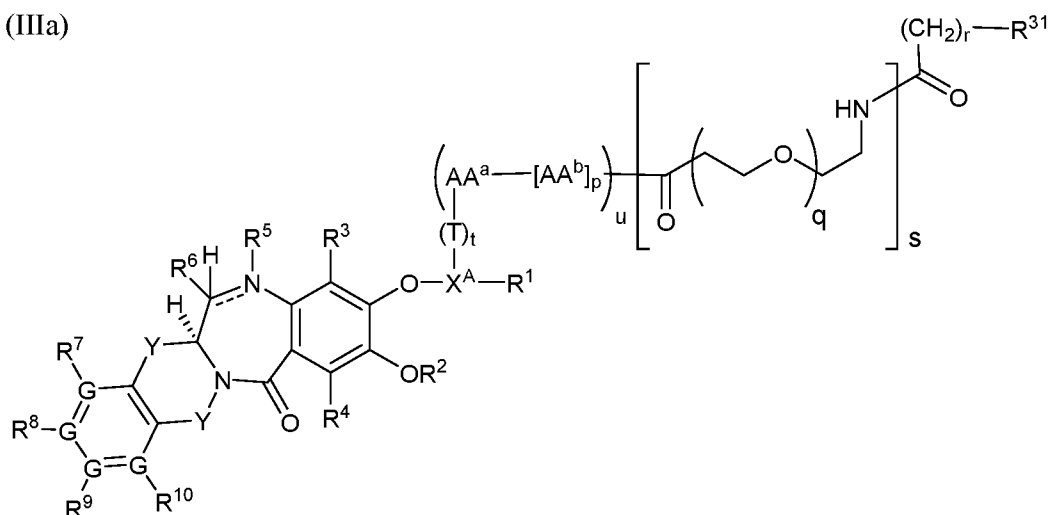
In type (a) dimer-linker compounds, a functional group for attachment of the linker is located in the bridge X between the two dimer halves. In type (b) dimer-linker compounds, the linker is attached as an addition product across an imine double bond. In types (c) and (c') dimer-linker compounds, a functional group for attachment of the linker is located at an "outside" ring of a THIQ, AZI, or PBD dimer unit.

15

In one embodiment, type (a) dimer-linker compound can be represented by the formula **(IIIa)**:



(IIIa)



wherein

T is a self-immolating group;

t is 0 or 1;

- 5 AA<sup>a</sup> and each AA<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from the group consisting of alanine, β-alanine, γ-aminobutyric acid, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, γ-carboxyglutamic acid, citrulline, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, norleucine, norvaline, ornithine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine;

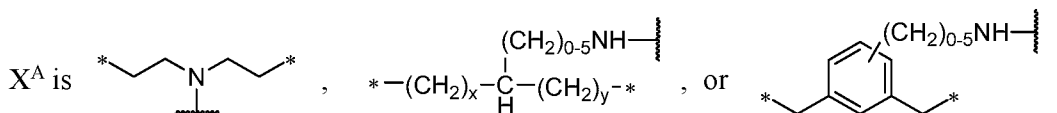
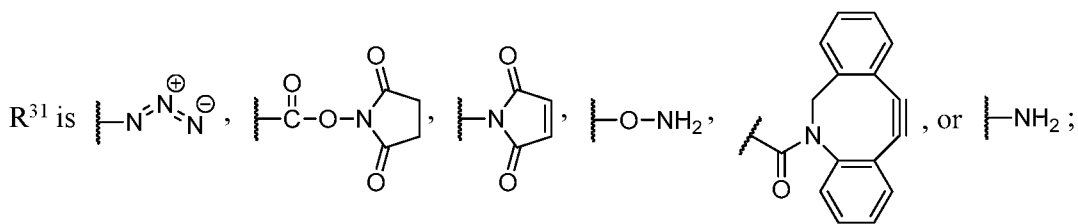
10 u is 0 or 1;

p is 1, 2, 3, or 4;

q is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, or 12 (preferably 2, 3, 4, or 8);

r is 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5;

s is 0 or 1;



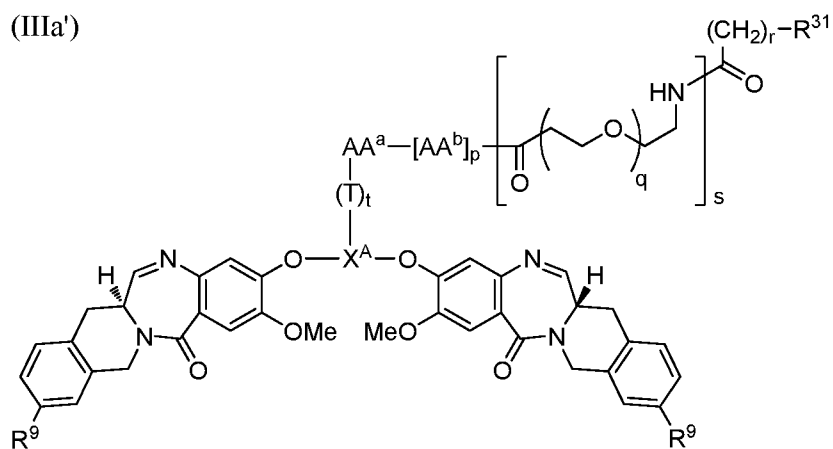
where each x and y is 1, 2, or 3 with the proviso that the sum of x and y is 2 or 4; the asterisks (\*) indicate the positions of bonding of each X<sup>A</sup> to the adjacent O and R<sup>1</sup>;

and the wavy line ~~~~~ indicates the position of bonding of each  $X^A$  to T if T is present or to  $AA^a$  if T is absent; and

$R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^8, R^9, R^{10}, G, Y$ , and the double line ===== are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove in respect of formula (I).

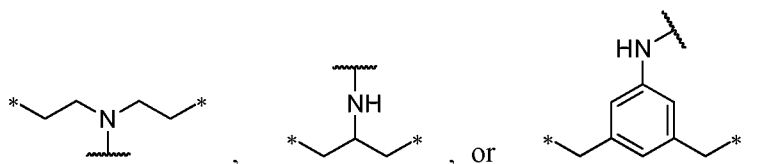
In one preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula (IIIa).

A preferred type (a) dimer-linker compound according to formula (IIIa) is represented by formula (IIIa'):



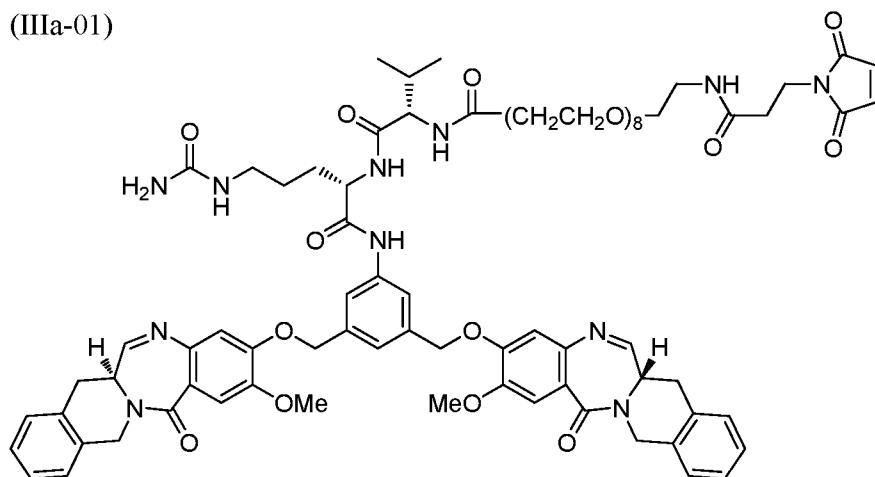
wherein each  $R^9$  is independently H,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-4}H$ ,  $(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-4}(C1-C_3 \text{ alkyl})$ , OH, Cl, F, or Br.

Preferably, in formulae (IIIa) and (IIIa'),  $X^A$  is

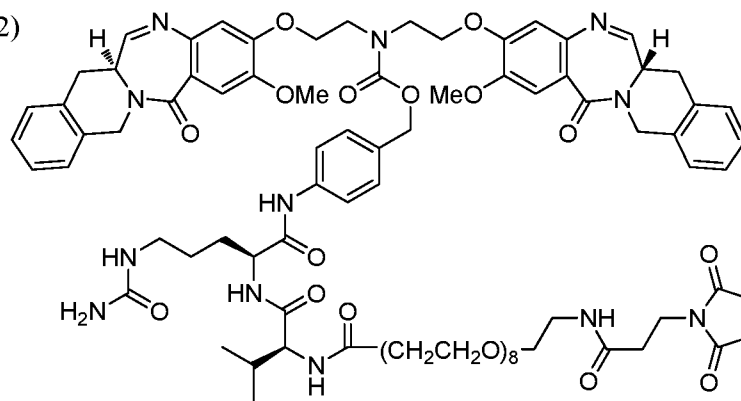


Examples of type (a) dimer-linker compounds include:

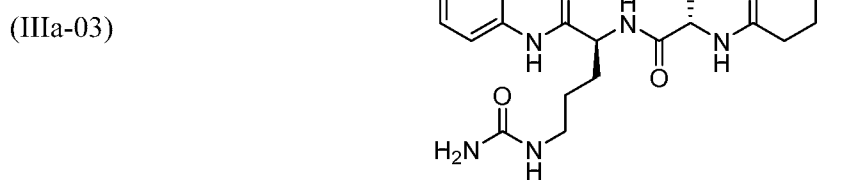
(IIIa-01)

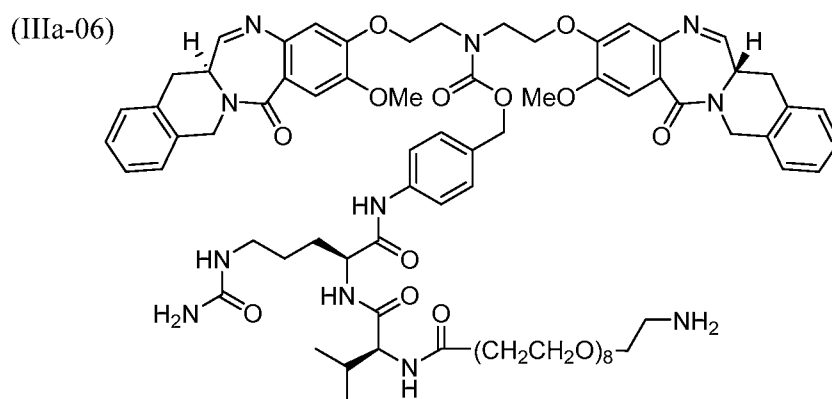
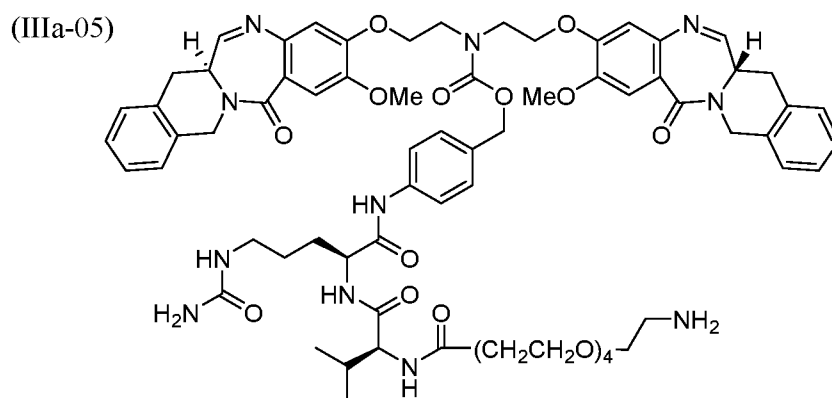
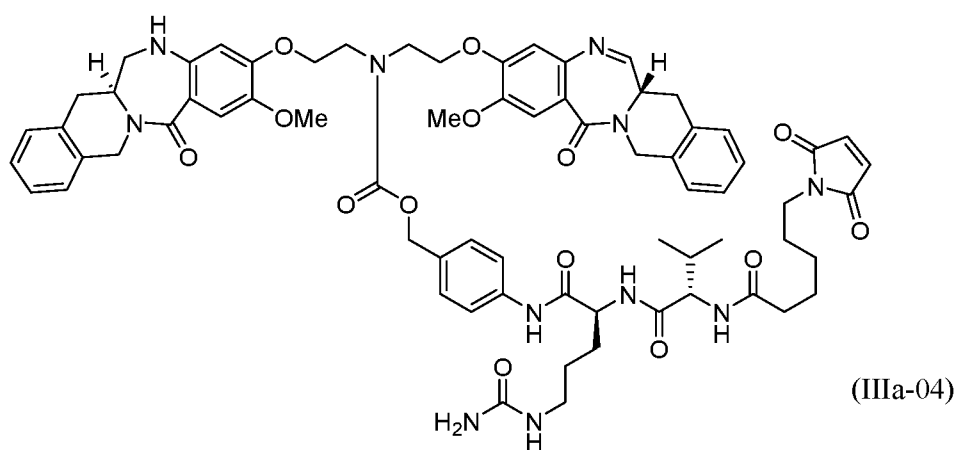


(IIIa-02)

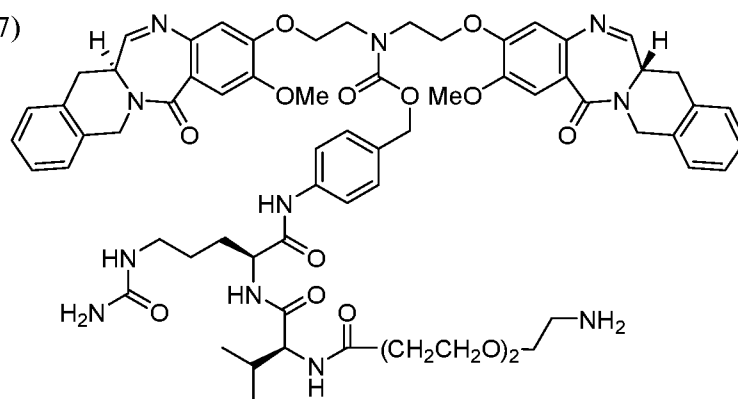


(IIIa-03)



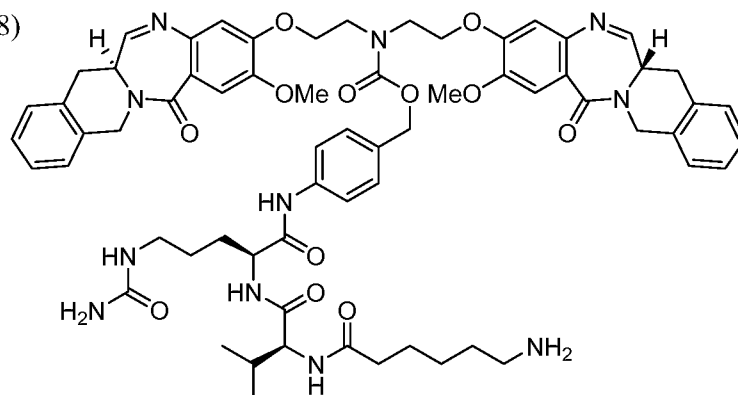


(IIIa-07)

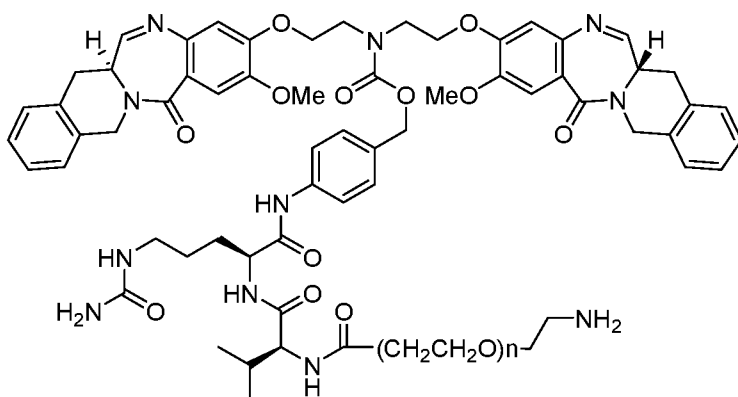


, and

(IIIa-08)



A preferred subgenus of dimer-linkers is according to the formula below

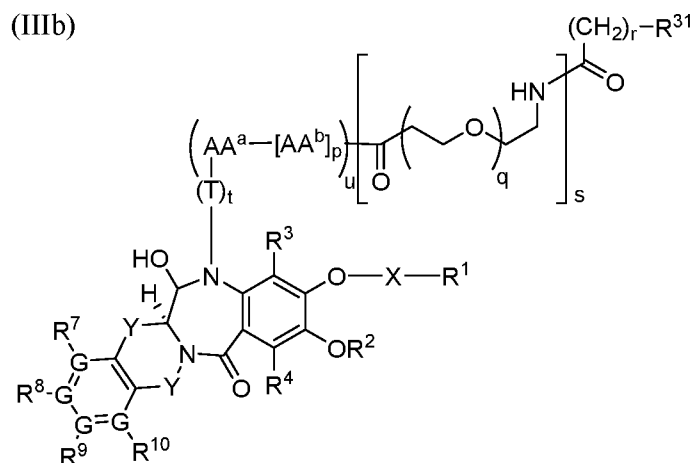


5

where the subscript n is 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, or 12.

Especially preferred type (a) dimer linker compounds are (IIIa-03) and (IIIa-04).

In another embodiment, type (b) dimer-linker compounds can be represented by formula (IIIb):



wherein

T, t, AA<sup>a</sup>, AA<sup>b</sup>, u, p, q, s, r, and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined in respect of formula (IIIa); and

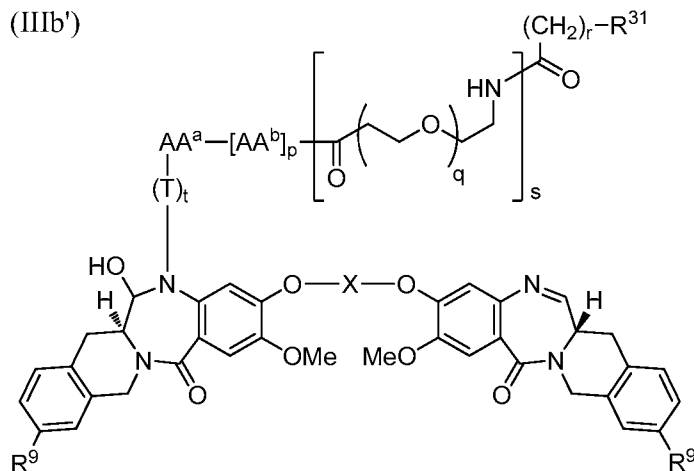
R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, X, Y, and G are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY

5 OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove.

In one preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula (IIIb).

A preferred type (b) dimer according to formula (IIIb) is represented by formula

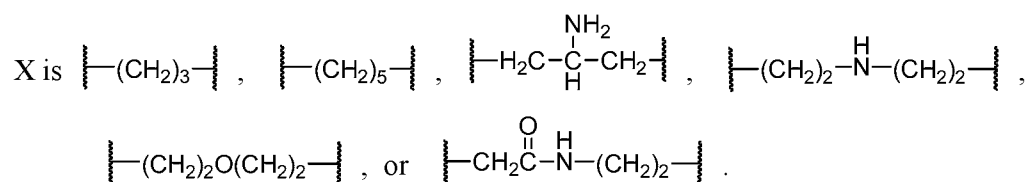
(IIIb')



10 wherein

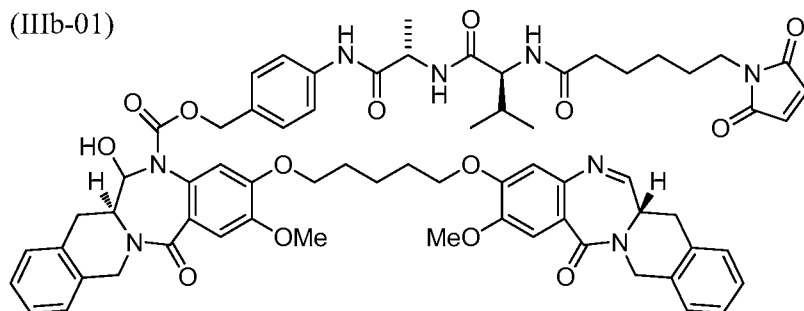
each R<sup>9</sup> is independently H, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-4</sub>H, (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-4</sub>(C1-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), OH, Cl, F, or Br;

and



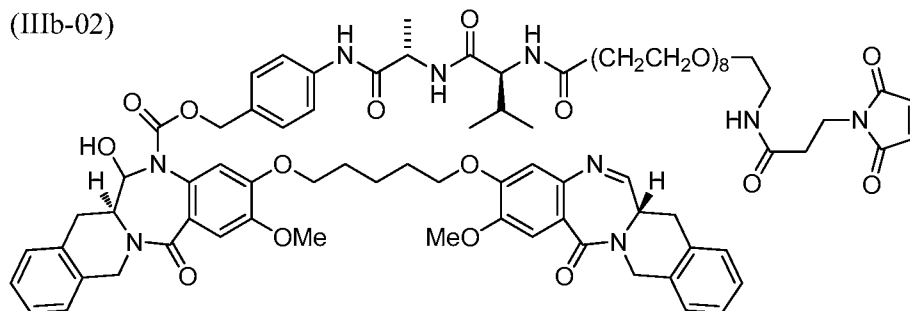
Examples of type (b) dimer-linker compounds include:

(IIIb-01)

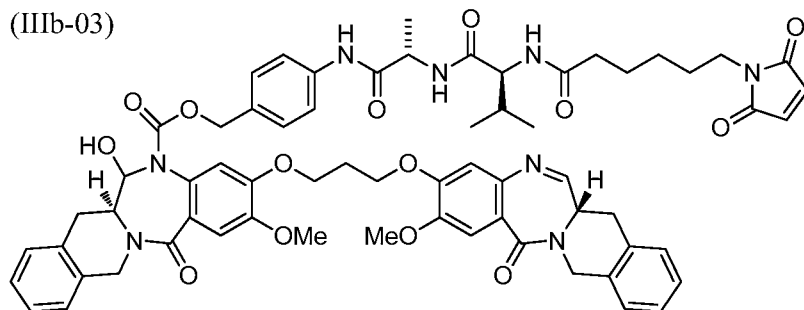


5

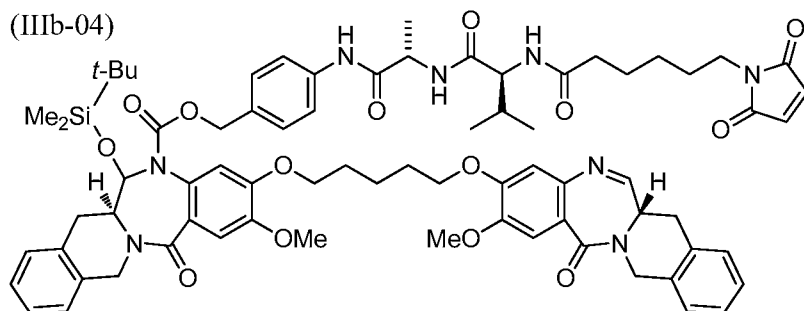
(IIIb-02)



(IIIb-03)

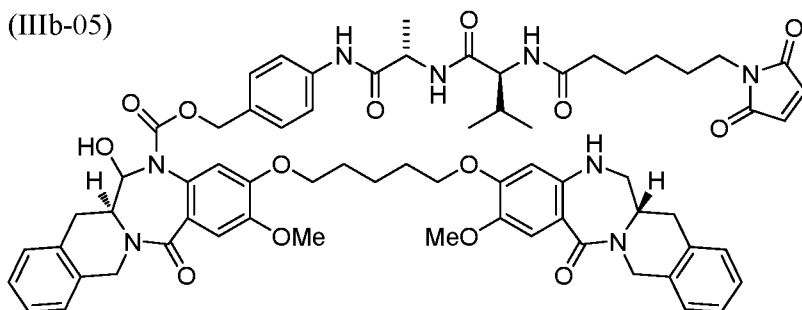


(IIIb-04)

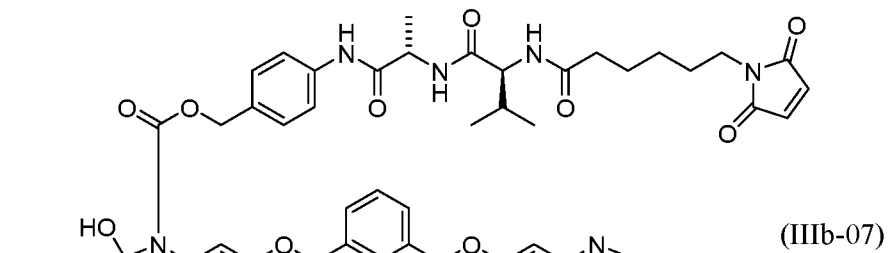
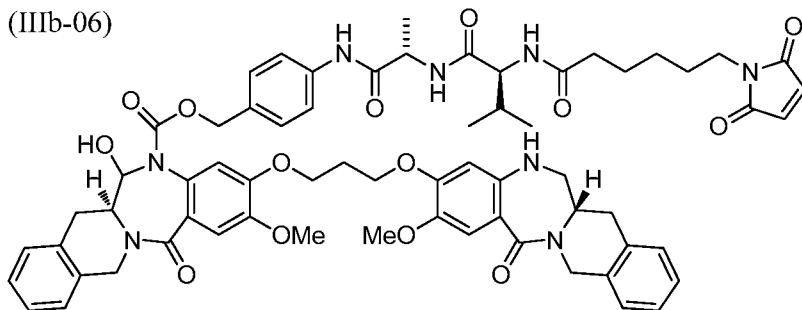


10

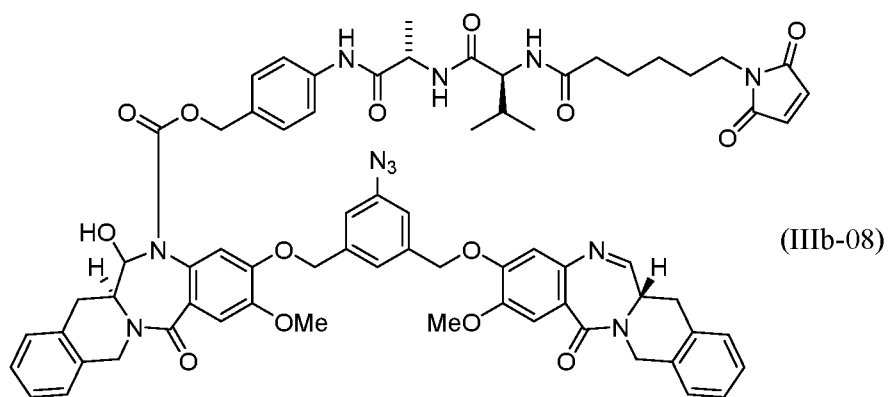
(IIIb-05)



(IIIb-06)



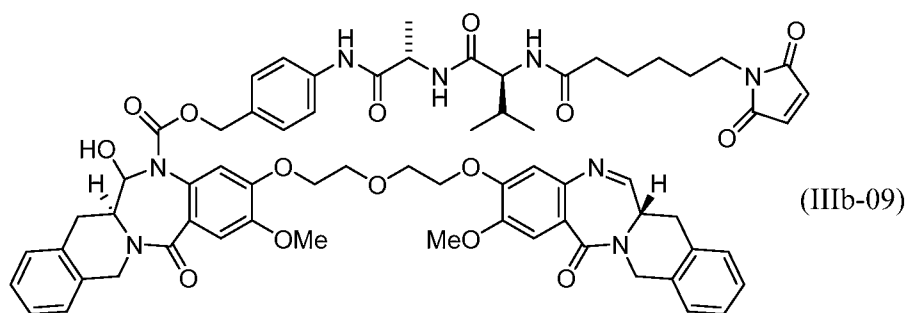
(IIIb-07)



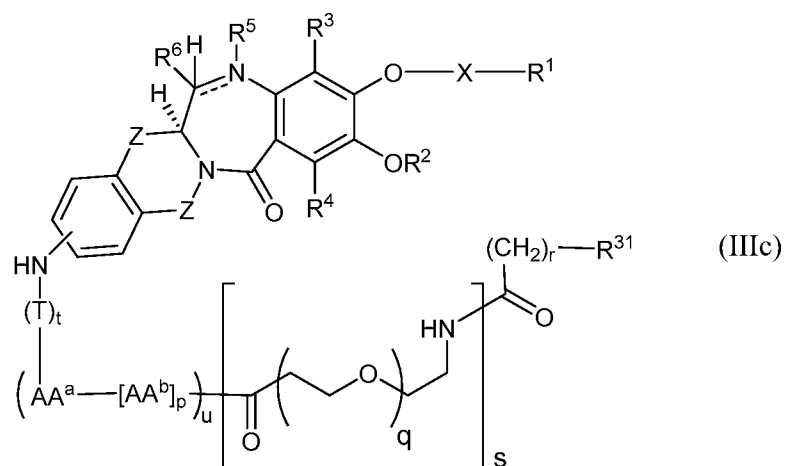
(IIIb-08)

, and





In one embodiment, type (c) dimer-linker compounds can be represented by formula **(IIIc)**:

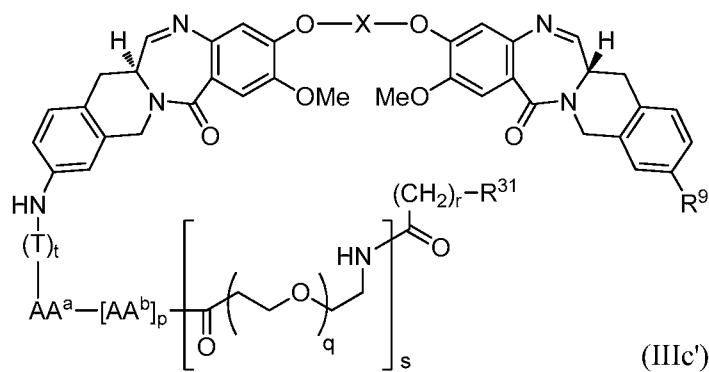


5 wherein

T, t, AA<sup>a</sup>, AA<sup>b</sup>, u, p, q, s, r, and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined in respect of formula **(IIIa)**; and  
 R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, Z, and the double line  $\equiv$  are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY  
 OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove.

In a preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula **(IIIc)**.

10 A preferred type (c) dimer-linker compound according to formula **(IIIc)** is  
 represented by formula **(IIIc')**:



wherein

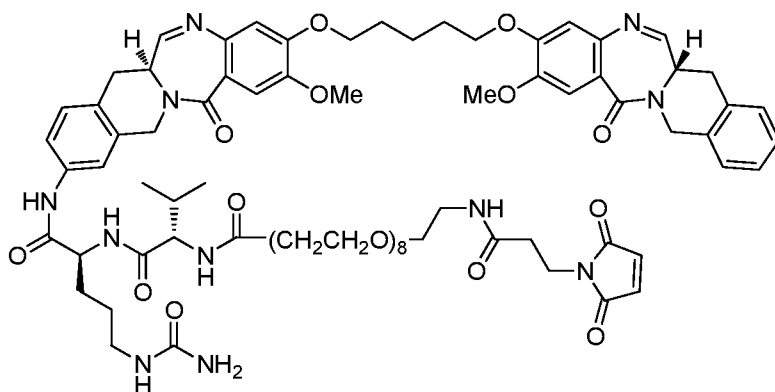
$R^9$  is H,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-4}H$ ,  $(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-4}(C1-C_3 \text{ alkyl})$ , OH, Cl, F, or Br; and

X is  $-(CH_2)_3-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_5-$ ,  $-H_2C-\overset{NH_2}{\underset{H}{C}}-CH_2-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_2-\overset{H}{N}-(CH_2)_2-$ ,

5  $-(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2-$ , or  $-CH_2-\overset{O}{\underset{H}{C}}-N-(CH_2)_2-$ .

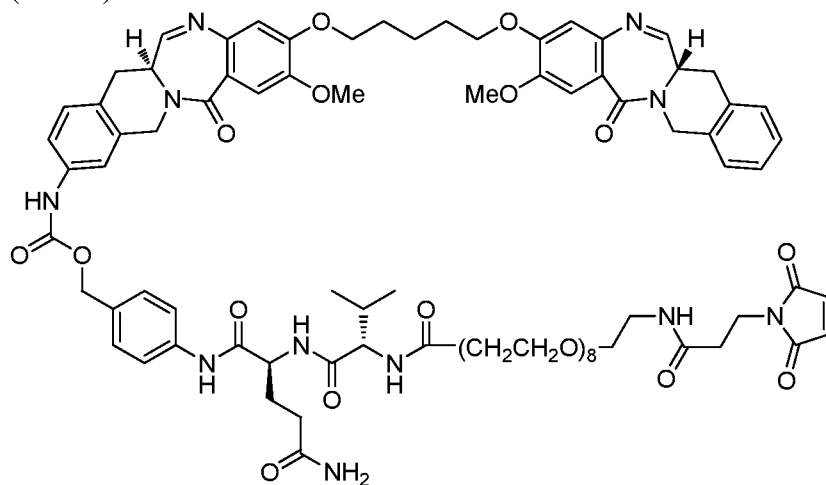
Examples of type (c) dimer-linker compounds include:

(IIIc-01)

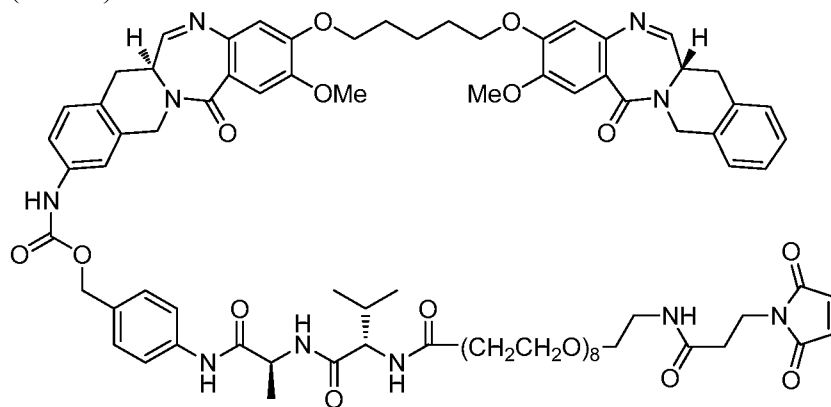


COC1=CC=C(C=C1)OC(=O)N2C(=O)C(=O)N2C3=CC=CC=C3C4=CC=CC=C4C5=CC=CC=C5C6=CC=CC=C6C7=CC=CC=C7C8=CC=CC=C8C9=CC=CC=C9C10=CC=CC=C10C11=CC=CC=C11C12=CC=CC=C12C13=CC=CC=C13C14=CC=CC=C14C15=CC=CC=C15C16=CC=CC=C16C17=CC=CC=C17C18=CC=CC=C18C19=CC=CC=C19C20=CC=CC=C20C21=CC=CC=C21C22=CC=CC=C22C23=CC=CC=C23C24=CC=CC=C24C25=CC=CC=C25C26=CC=CC=C26C27=CC=CC=C27C28=CC=CC=C28C29=CC=CC=C29C30=CC=CC=C30C31=CC=CC=C31C32=CC=CC=C32C33=CC=CC=C33C34=CC=CC=C34C35=CC=CC=C35C36=CC=CC=C36C37=CC=CC=C37C38=CC=CC=C38C39=CC=CC=C39C40=CC=CC=C40C41=CC=CC=C41C42=CC=CC=C42C43=CC=CC=C43C44=CC=CC=C44C45=CC=CC=C45C46=CC=CC=C46C47=CC=CC=C47C48=CC=CC=C48C49=CC=CC=C49C50=CC=CC=C50C51=CC=CC=C51C52=CC=CC=C52C53=CC=CC=C53C54=CC=CC=C54C55=CC=CC=C55C56=CC=CC=C56C57=CC=CC=C57C58=CC=CC=C58C59=CC=CC=C59C60=CC=CC=C60C61=CC=CC=C61C62=CC=CC=C62C63=CC=CC=C63C64=CC=CC=C64C65=CC=CC=C65C66=CC=CC=C66C67=CC=CC=C67C68=CC=CC=C68C69=CC=CC=C69C70=CC=CC=C70C71=CC=CC=C71C72=CC=CC=C72C73=CC=CC=C73C74=CC=CC=C74C75=CC=CC=C75C76=CC=CC=C76C77=CC=CC=C77C78=CC=CC=C78C79=CC=CC=C79C80=CC=CC=C80C81=CC=CC=C81C82=CC=CC=C82C83=CC=CC=C83C84=CC=CC=C84C85=CC=CC=C85C86=CC=CC=C86C87=CC=CC=C87C88=CC=CC=C88C89=CC=CC=C89C90=CC=CC=C90C91=CC=CC=C91C92=CC=CC=C92C93=CC=CC=C93C94=CC=CC=C94C95=CC=CC=C95C96=CC=CC=C96C97=CC=CC=C97C98=CC=CC=C98C99=CC=CC=C99C100=CC=CC=C100C101=CC=CC=C101C102=CC=CC=C102C103=CC=CC=C103C104=CC=CC=C104C105=CC=CC=C105C106=CC=CC=C106C107=CC=CC=C107C108=CC=CC=C108C109=CC=CC=C109C110=CC=CC=C110C111=CC=CC=C111C112=CC=CC=C112C113=CC=CC=C113C114=CC=CC=C114C115=CC=CC=C115C116=CC=CC=C116C117=CC=CC=C117C118=CC=CC=C118C119=CC=CC=C119C120=CC=CC=C120C121=CC=CC=C121C122=CC=CC=C122C123=CC=CC=C123C124=CC=CC=C124C125=CC=CC=C125C126=CC=CC=C126C127=CC=CC=C127C128=CC=CC=C128C129=CC=CC=C129C130=CC=CC=C130C131=CC=CC=C131C132=CC=CC=C132C133=CC=CC=C133C134=CC=CC=C134C135=CC=CC=C135C136=CC=CC=C136C137=CC=CC=C137C138=CC=CC=C138C139=CC=CC=C139C140=CC=CC=C140C141=CC=CC=C141C142=CC=CC=C142C143=CC=CC=C143C144=CC=CC=C144C145=CC=CC=C145C146=CC=CC=C146C147=CC=CC=C147C148=CC=CC=C148C149=CC=CC=C149C150=CC=CC=C150C151=CC=CC=C151C152=CC=CC=C152C153=CC=CC=C153C154=CC=CC=C154C155=CC=CC=C155C156=CC=CC=C156C157=CC=CC=C157C158=CC=CC=C158C159=CC=CC=C159C160=CC=CC=C160C161=CC=CC=C161C162=CC=CC=C162C163=CC=CC=C163C164=CC=CC=C164C165=CC=CC=C165C166=CC=CC=C166C167=CC=CC=C167C168=CC=CC=C168C169=CC=CC=C169C170=CC=CC=C170C171=CC=CC=C171C172=CC=CC=C172C173=CC=CC=C173C174=CC=CC=C174C175=CC=CC=C175C176=CC=CC=C176C177=CC=CC=C177C178=CC=CC=C178C179=CC=CC=C179C180=CC=CC=C180C181=CC=CC=C181C182=CC=CC=C182C183=CC=CC=C183C184=CC=CC=C184C185=CC=CC=C185C186=CC=CC=C186C187=CC=CC=C187C188=CC=CC=C188C189=CC=CC=C189C190=CC=CC=C190C191=CC=CC=C191C192=CC=CC=C192C193=CC=CC=C193C194=CC=CC=C194C195=CC=CC=C195C196=CC=CC=C196C197=CC=CC=C197C198=CC=CC=C198C199=CC=CC=C199C200=CC=CC=C200C201=CC=CC=C201C202=CC=CC=C202C203=CC=CC=C203C204=CC=CC=C204C205=CC=CC=C205C206=CC=CC=C206C207=CC=CC=C207C208=CC=CC=C208C209=CC=CC=C209C210=CC=CC=C210C211=CC=CC=C211C212=CC=CC=C212C213=CC=CC=C213C214=CC=CC=C214C215=CC=CC=C215C216=CC=CC=C216C217=CC=CC=C217C218=CC=CC=C218C219=CC=CC=C219C220=CC=CC=C220C221=CC=CC=C221C222=CC=CC=C222C223=CC=CC=C223C224=CC=CC=C224C225=CC=CC=C225C226=CC=CC=C226C227=CC=CC=C227C228=CC=CC=C228C229=CC=CC=C229C230=CC=CC=C230C231=CC=CC=C231C232=CC=CC=C232C233=CC=CC=C233C234=CC=CC=C234C235=CC=CC=C235C236=CC=CC=C236C237=CC=CC=C237C238=CC=CC=C238C239=CC=CC=C239C240=CC=CC=C240C241=CC=CC=C241C242=CC=CC=C242C243=CC=CC=C243C244=CC=CC=C244C245=CC=CC=C245C246=CC=CC=C246C247=CC=CC=C247C248=CC=CC=C248C249=CC=CC=C249C250=CC=CC=C250C251=CC=CC=C251C252=CC=CC=C252C253=CC=CC=C253C254=CC=CC=C254C255=CC=CC=C255C256=CC=CC=C256C257=CC=CC=C257C258=CC=CC=C258C259=CC=CC=C259C260=CC=CC=C260C261=CC=CC=C261C262=CC=CC=C262C263=CC=CC=C263C264=CC=CC=C264C265=CC=CC=C265C266=CC=CC=C266C267=CC=CC=C267C268=CC=CC=C268C269=CC=CC=C269C270=CC=CC=C270C271=CC=CC=C271C272=CC=CC=C272C273=CC=CC=C273C274=CC=CC=C274C275=CC=CC=C275C276=CC=CC=C276C277=CC=CC=C277C278=CC=CC=C278C279=CC=CC=C279C280=CC=CC=C280C281=CC=CC=C281C282=CC=CC=C282C283=CC=CC=C283C284=CC=CC=C284C285=CC=CC=C285C286=CC=CC=C286C287=CC=CC=C287C288=CC=CC=C288C289=CC=CC=C289C290=CC=CC=C290C291=CC=CC=C291C292=CC=CC=C292C293=CC=CC=C293C294=CC=CC=C294C295=CC=CC=C295C296=CC=CC=C296C297=CC=CC=C297C298=CC=CC=C298C299=CC=CC=C299C300=CC=CC=C300C301=CC=CC=C301C302=CC=CC=C302C303=CC=CC=C303C304=CC=CC=C304C305=CC=CC=C305C306=CC=CC=C306C307=CC=CC=C307C308=CC=CC=C308C309=CC=CC=C309C310=CC=CC=C310C311=CC=CC=C311C312=CC=CC=C312C313=CC=CC=C313C314=CC=CC=C314C315=CC=CC=C315C316=CC=CC=C316C317=CC=CC=C317C318=CC=CC=C318C319=CC=CC=C319C320=CC=CC=C320C321=CC=CC=C321C322=CC=CC=C322C323=CC=CC=C323C324=CC=CC=C324C325=CC=CC=C325C326=CC=CC=C326C327=CC=CC=C327C328=CC=CC=C328C329=CC=CC=C329C330=CC=CC=C330C331=CC=CC=C331C332=CC=CC=C332C333=CC=CC=C333C334=CC=CC=C334C335=CC=CC=C335C336=CC=CC=C336C337=CC=CC=C337C338=CC=CC=C338C339=CC=CC=C339C340=CC=CC=C340C341=CC=CC=C341C342=CC=CC=C342C343=CC=CC=C343C344=CC=CC=C344C345=CC=CC=C345C346=CC=CC=C346C347=CC=CC=C347C348=CC=CC=C348C349=CC=CC=C349C350=CC=CC=C350C351=CC=CC=C351C352=CC=CC=C352C353=CC=CC=C353C354=CC=CC=C354C355=CC=CC=C355C356=CC=CC=C356C357=CC=CC=C357C358=CC=CC=C358C[illegible][illegible]

(IIIc-05)

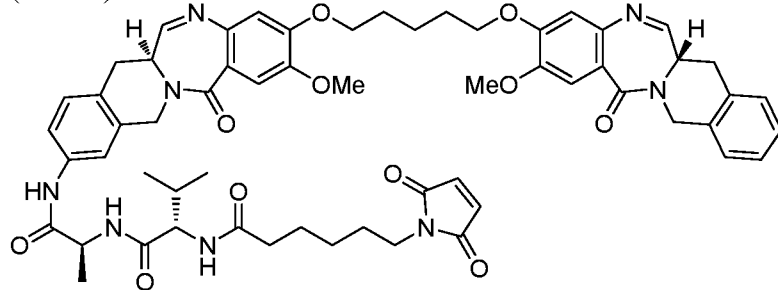


(IIIc-06)



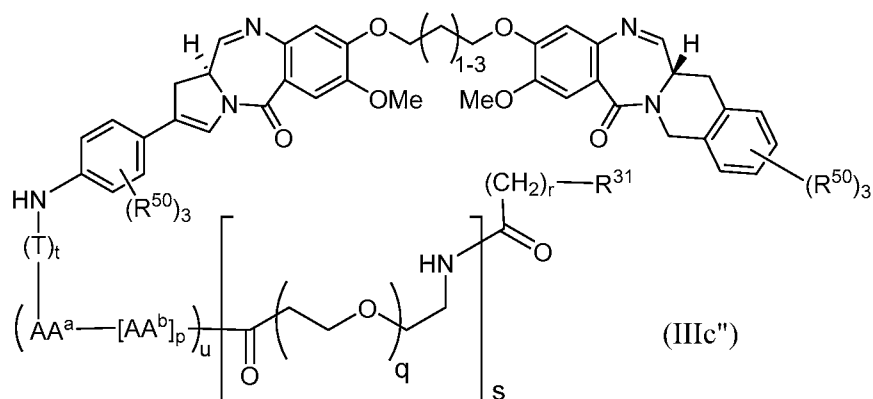
, and

(IIIc-07)



5

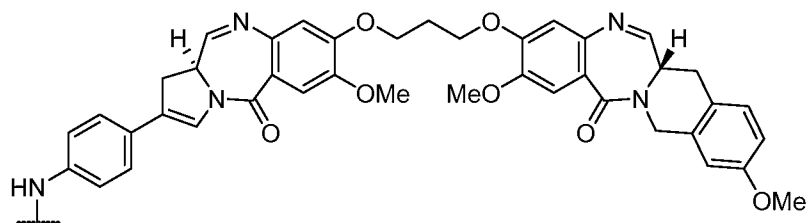
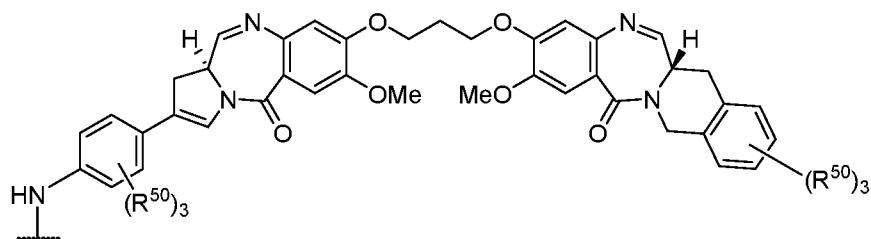
A preferred type (c') dimer-linker is represented by formula (IIIc''):



wherein

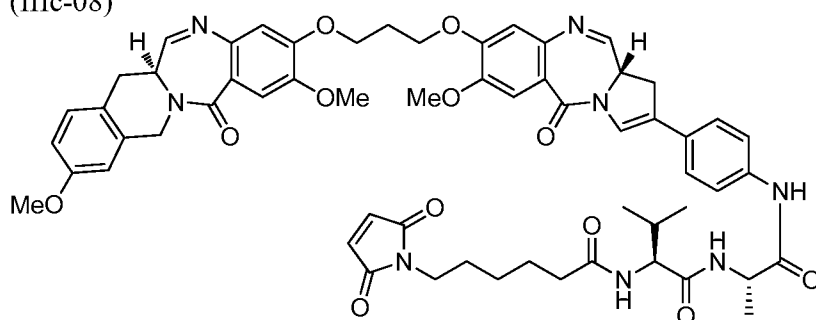
T, t, AA<sup>a</sup>, AA<sup>b</sup>, u, p, q, s, r, and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined in respect of formula (IIIa); and each R<sup>50</sup> is independently H, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkylene), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkynyl), F, Cl, Br, or CN.

Preferably, in formula (IIIc''), the moiety



An example of a dimer-linker according to formula (IIIc'') is:

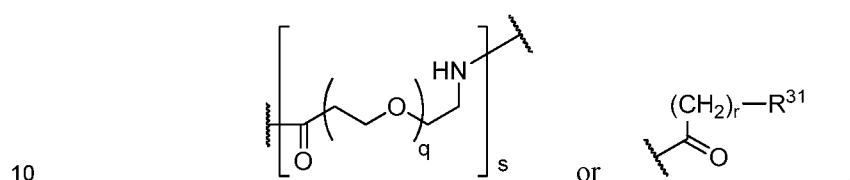
(IIIc-08)



An especially preferred type (c)/(c') dimer-linker compound is (IIIc-08).

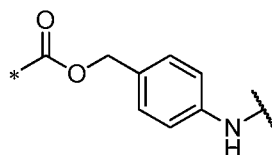
$R^{31}$  in formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc') and (IIIc'') is a reactive functional group capable of reacting with a complementary functional group on the antibody to effect conjugation, as described above.

In formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc'), and (IIIc''),  $-AA^a-$   
 5  $[AA^b]_p-$  represents a polypeptide whose length is determined by the value of  $p$  (dipeptide if  $p$  is 1, tetrapeptide if  $p$  is 3, etc.).  $AA^a$  is at the carboxy terminus of the polypeptide and its carboxyl group forms a peptide (amide) bond with an amine nitrogen of the dimer. Conversely, the last  $AA^b$  is at the amino terminus of the polypeptide and its  $\alpha$ -amino group forms a peptide bond with

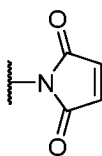


depending on whether  $s$  is 1 or 0, respectively. Preferred polypeptides  $-AA^a-[AA^b]_p-$  are Val-Cit, Val-Lys, Lys-Val-Ala, Asp-Val-Ala, Val-Ala, Lys-Val-Cit, Ala-Val-Cit, Val-Gly, Val-Gln, and Asp-Val-Cit, written in the conventional N-to-C direction, as in  $H_2N$ -Val-Cit- $CO_2H$ ). More preferably, the polypeptide is Val-Cit, Val-Lys, or Val-Ala.  
 15 Preferably, a polypeptide  $-AA^a-[AA^b]_p-$  is cleavable by an enzyme found inside the target (cancer) cell, for example a cathepsin and especially cathepsin B.

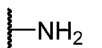
As indicated by the subscript  $t$  equals 0 or 1, a self-immolating group  $T$  is optionally present in dimer-linker compounds of formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc') and (IIIc''). When present, the self-immolating group  $T$  preferably is a  $p$ -aminobenzyl oxycarbonyl (PABC) group, whose structure is shown below, with an asterisk (\*) denoting the end of the PABC bonded to an amine nitrogen of the dimer and a wavy line (~~~~~) denoting the end bonded to the polypeptide  $-AA^a-[AA^b]_p-$ .



In a preferred embodiment, in formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc') or (IIIc'') the group R<sup>31</sup> is



In another preferred embodiment, in formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc') or (IIIc'') the group R<sup>31</sup> is



#### *Preparation of Conjugates*

This general procedure is based on introduction of free thiol groups into an antibody by reaction of lysine ε-amino groups with 2-iminothiolane, followed by reaction with a maleimide-containing drug-linker moiety, such as described above. Initially the antibody is buffer exchanged into 0.1 M phosphate buffer (pH 8.0) containing 50 mM NaCl and 2 mM diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid (DTPA) and concentrated to 5-10 mg/mL. Thiolation is achieved through addition of 2-iminothiolane to the antibody. The amount of 2-iminothiolane to be added can be determined by a preliminary experiment and varies from antibody to antibody. In the preliminary experiment, a titration of increasing amounts of 2-iminothiolane is added to the antibody, and following incubation with the antibody for 1 h at RT (room temperature, circa 25 °C), the antibody is desalted into 50 mM HEPES, 5 mM Glycine, 2 mM DTPA, pH 5.5 using a SEPHADEX™ G-25 column and the number of thiol groups introduced determined rapidly by reaction with dithiodipyridine (DTDP). Reaction of thiol groups with DTDP results in liberation of thiopyridine, which can be monitored spectroscopically at 324 nm. Samples at a protein concentration of 0.5-1.0 mg/mL are typically used. The absorbance at 280 nm can be used to accurately determine the concentration of protein in the samples, and then an aliquot of each sample (0.9 mL) is incubated with 0.1 mL DTDP (5 mM stock solution in ethanol) for 10 min at RT. Blank samples of buffer alone plus DTDP are also incubated alongside. After 10 min, absorbance at 324 nm is measured and the number of thiol groups is quantitated using an extinction coefficient for thiopyridine of 19,800 M<sup>-1</sup>.

Typically a thiolation level of about two to three thiol groups per antibody is desirable. For example, with some antibodies this can be achieved by adding a 15-fold molar

excess of 2-iminothiolane followed by incubation at RT for 1 h. The antibody is then incubated with 2-iminothiolane at the desired molar ratio and then desalted into conjugation buffer (50 mM HEPES, 5 mM glycine, 2 mM DTPA, pH 5.5)). The thiolated material is maintained on ice while the number of thiols introduced is quantitated as described above.

5           After verification of the number of thiols introduced, the drug (dimer)-linker moiety is added at a 2.5-fold molar excess per thiol. The conjugation reaction is allowed to proceed in conjugation buffer containing a final concentration of 25% propylene glycol and 5% trehalose. Commonly, the drug-linker stock solution is dissolved in 100% DMSO. The stock solution is added directly to the thiolated antibody.

10           The conjugation reaction mixture is incubated at RT for 2 h with gentle stirring. A 10-fold molar excess of N-ethyl maleimide (100 mM Stock in DMSO) is then added to the conjugation mixture and stirred for an additional hour to block any unreacted thiols.

          The sample is then filtered via a 0.2  $\mu$  filter. The material is buffer exchanged via TFF VivaFlow 50 Sartorius 30 MWCO PES membrane into 10 mg/mL glycine, 20  
15 mg/mL sorbitol, 15% acetonitrile pH 5.0 (5X TFF buffer exchange volume), to remove any unreacted drug. The final formulation is carried out by TFF into 20 mg/mL sorbitol, 10 mg/mL glycine, pH 5.0.

          The following procedure can be used for transglutaminase mediated conjugation of dimer-linker compounds wherein the linker has an amine group that can act as an amine  
20 donor. The antibody can be one that has a transglutaminase-reactive glutamine, for example one with an N297A or N297Q substitution. Conjugation is carried out by recombinant bacterial transglutaminase with a molar ratio of antibody:enzyme of 5:1. The conjugation is carried out using standard protocols in 50 mM Tris buffer, pH 8.0, incubated overnight at 37 °C. The resulting conjugate is purified on a Protein A column, pre-equilibrated with 50 mM  
25 Tris, pH 8.0. The conjugate is eluted with 0.1 M sodium citrate buffer, pH 3.5. The eluted fractions are neutralized with 1M Tris pH 9.0. The conjugated can be formulated in 20 mg/mL Sorbitol, 10 mg/mL Glycine, pH 5.0.

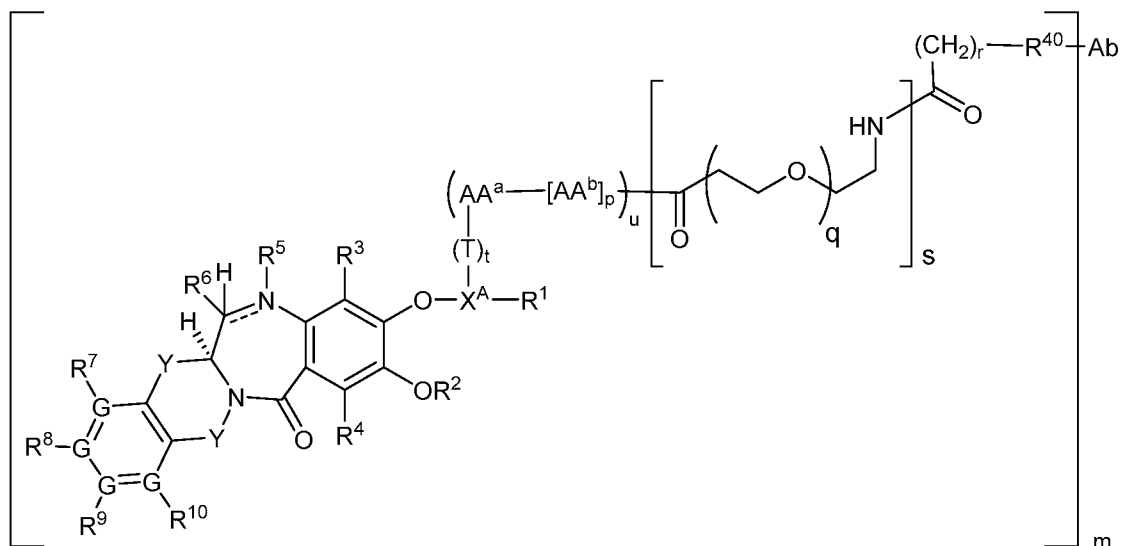
          Those skilled in the art will understand that the above-described conditions and methodologies are exemplary and non-limiting and that other approaches for conjugation are  
30 known in the art and usable in the present invention.



### Conjugates

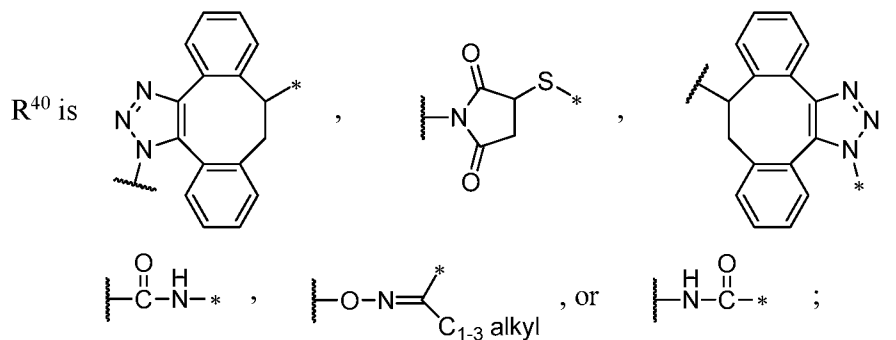
In one embodiment, conjugates of this invention are derived from type (a) dimer-linker compounds and can be represented by the formula **(IVa)**:

(IVa)



5 wherein

Ab is an antibody;



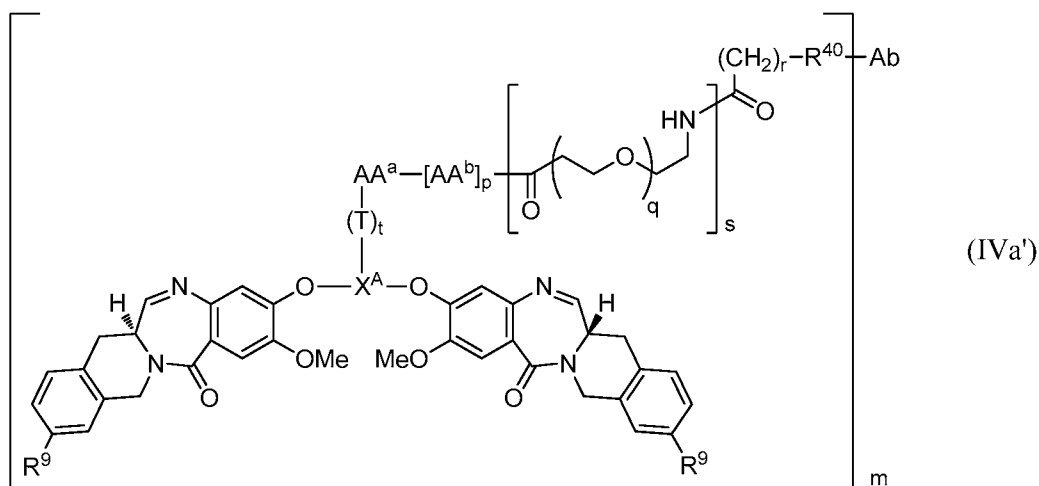
10 where the open valence of  $R^{40}$  that is bonded to Ab is denoted by an asterisk (\*) and the open valence of  $R^{40}$  that is bonded to  $(CH_2)_r$  is denoted by a wavy line (~~~~~); m is 1, 2, 3, or 4;

T, t,  $AA^a$ ,  $AA^b$ , u, p, q, s, r, and  $X^A$  are as defined in respect of formula **(IIIa)**; and

$R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , Y, G, and the double line ===== are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove.

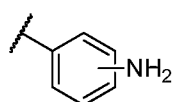
15 In a preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula **(IVa)**.

A preferred conjugate according to formula (IVa) is represented by formula (IVa'):

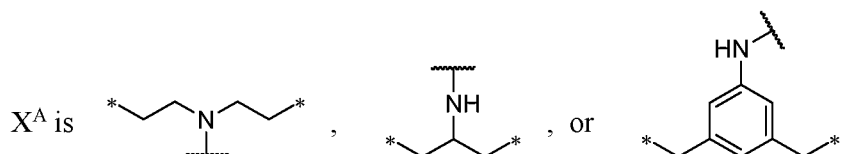


where

- 5  $R^9$  is H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



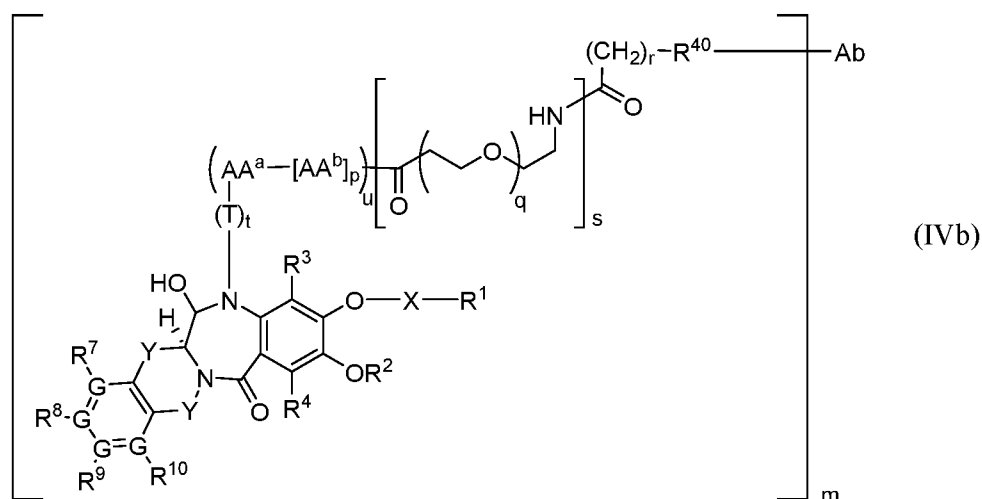
(especially the *para*- isomer) ; and



wherein the asterisks (\*) indicate the positions of bonding of each  $X^A$  to the adjacent O and  $R^1$  and the wavy line indicates the position of bonding of each  $X^A$  to T if T is present or to  $AA^a$  if T is absent.

10

In another embodiment, conjugates of this invention are derived from type (b) dimer-linker compounds and can be represented by the formula (IVb):



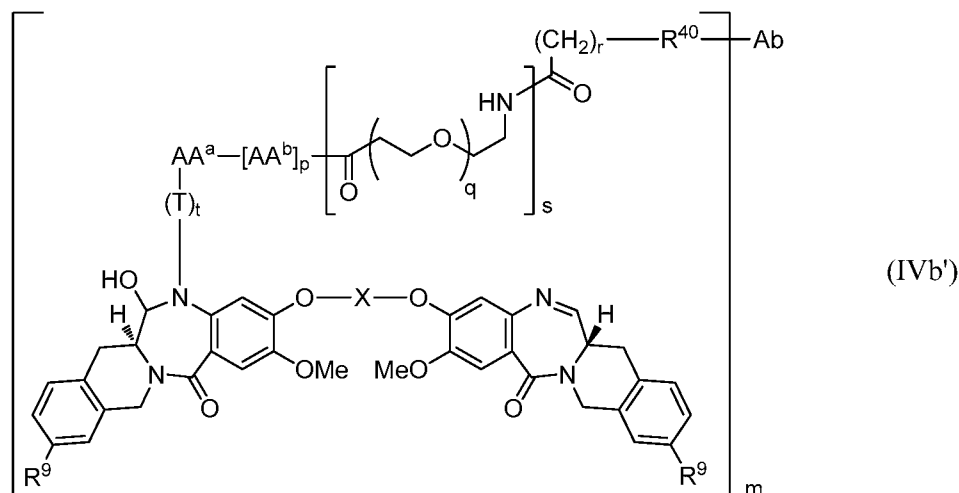
wherein

Ab,  $R^{40}$ , m, T, t,  $AA^a$ ,  $AA^b$ , u, p, q, s, and r are as defined in respect of formula (IVa); and  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ , Y, G, and X are as defined in the BRIEF SUMMARY OF

5 THE INVENTION section hereinabove in respect of formula (I).

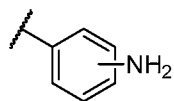
In a preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula (IVb).

A preferred conjugate according to formula (IVb) is represented by formula (IVb'):



10 wherein

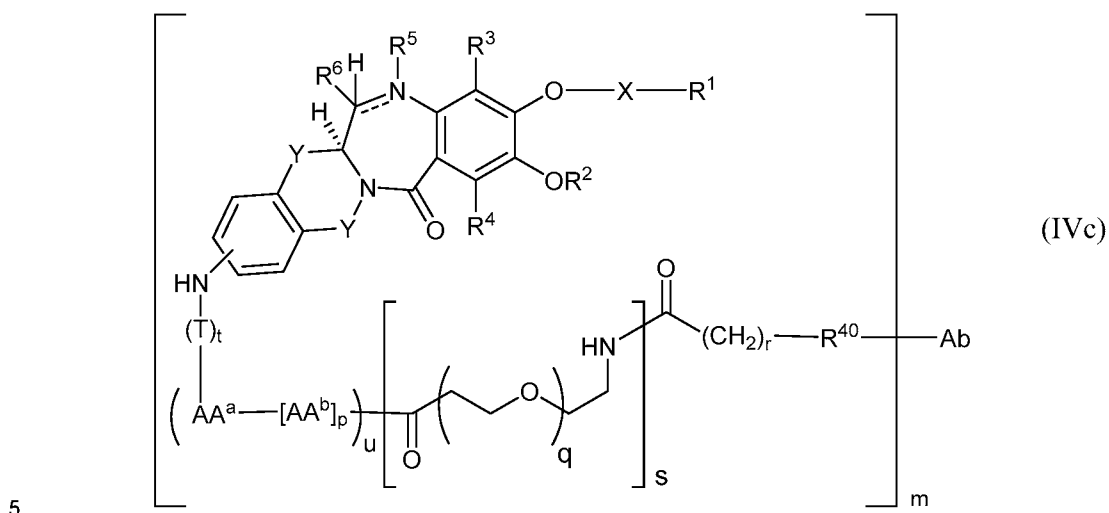
$R^9$  is H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



(especially the *para*- isomer) ; and

X is  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}\text{H}_2\text{C}-\overset{\text{NH}_2}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}-\text{CH}_2\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_2-\overset{\text{H}}{\text{N}}-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$ ,  
 $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$ , or  $\text{---}\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}-\text{N}-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$ .

In another embodiment, conjugates of this invention are derived from type (c) dimer-linker compounds and can be represented by the formula (IVc):



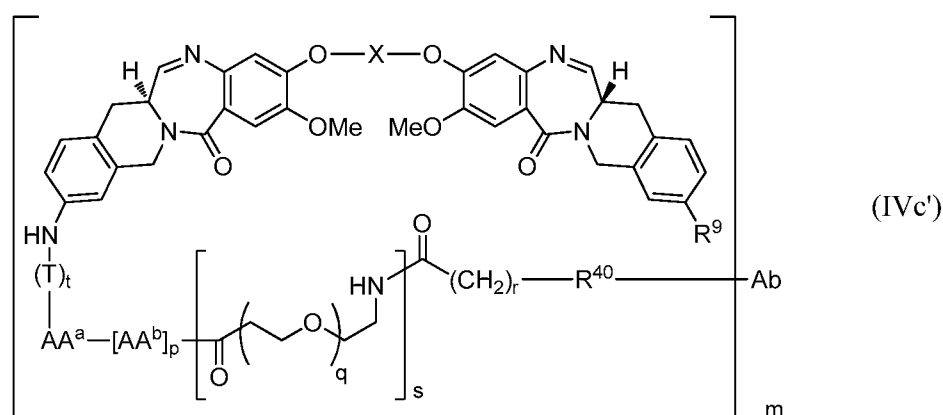
wherein

Ab, R<sup>40</sup>, m, T, t, AA<sup>a</sup>, AA<sup>b</sup>, u, p, q, s, and r are as defined in respect of formula (IVa); and R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, Y, X, and the double line  $\text{---}$  are as defined in the BRIEF

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION section hereinabove.

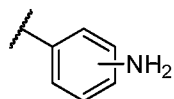
10 In a preferred embodiment, u is 1 in formula (IVc).

A preferred conjugate according to formula (IVc) is represented by formula (IVc'):



wherein

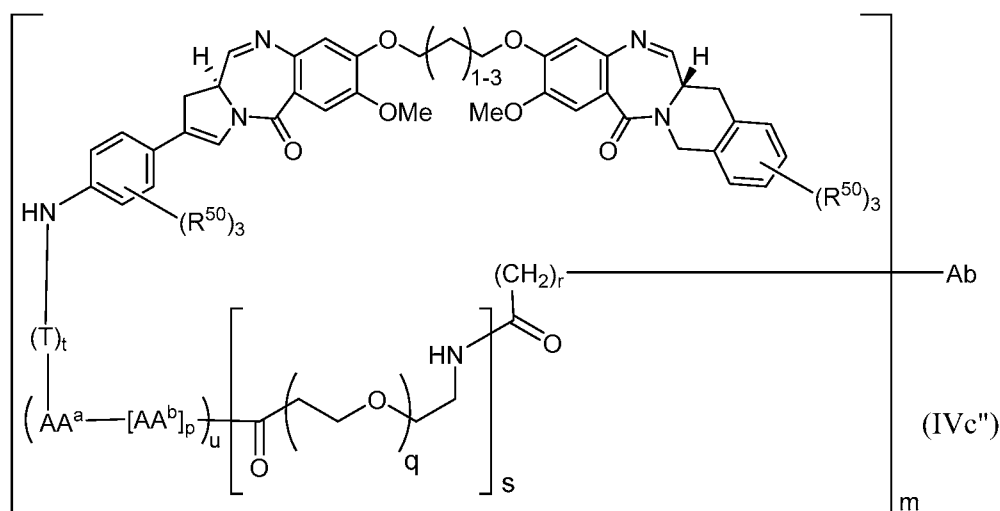
$R^9$  is H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



(especially the *para*- isomer) ; and

X is  $-(CH_2)_3-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_5-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2-$ , or  $-CH_2C(=O)NH-(CH_2)_2-$ .

5 In another embodiment, a conjugate of this invention has a structure represented by formula (IVc'')



wherein Ab,  $R^{40}$ , m, T, t,  $AA^a$ ,  $AA^b$ , u, p, q, s, and r are as defined in respect of formula (IVa); and each  $R^{50}$  is independently H,  $O(C_1-C_3 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $O(C_2-C_3 \text{ alkylene})$ ,  $O(C_2-C_3$   
 10  $\text{alkynyl})$ , F, Cl, Br, or CN.

The preferences stated hereinabove in respect of the dimer linkers of formulae (IIIa), (IIIa'), (IIIb), (IIIb'), (IIIc), (IIIc') and (IIIc'') for the polypeptide  $-AA^a-[AA^b]_p-$  and the self-immolating group T are also applicable to conjugates of formulae (IVa), (IVa'), (IVb), (IVb'), (IVc), (IVc') and (IVc'').

15 In formulae (IVa), (IVb), (IVc) and (IVc''), if the subscripts t and u are both 0, then the linker is of the non-cleavable type and relies on degradation of the antibody Ab to release the drug. The polyethylene glycol component optionally may be present (i.e., s is 1) if its presence is beneficial, for example by increasing the solubility of the drug-linker compound during conjugation and does not interfere with the biological activity of the drug.

## PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the present invention, or of a conjugate thereof, formulated together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient. It may optionally contain one or more additional pharmaceutically active ingredients, such as an antibody or another drug. The pharmaceutical compositions can be administered in a combination therapy with another therapeutic agent, especially another anti-cancer agent.

The pharmaceutical composition may comprise one or more excipients. Excipients that may be used include carriers, surface active agents, thickening or emulsifying agents, solid binders, dispersion or suspension aids, solubilizers, colorants, flavoring agents, coatings, disintegrating agents, lubricants, sweeteners, preservatives, isotonic agents, and combinations thereof. The selection and use of suitable excipients is taught in Gennaro, ed., *Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy*, 20th Ed. (Lippincott Williams & Wilkins 2003), the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

Preferably, a pharmaceutical composition is suitable for intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, parenteral, spinal or epidermal administration (e.g., by injection or infusion). Depending on the route of administration, the active compound may be coated in a material to protect it from the action of acids and other natural conditions that may inactivate it. The phrase "parenteral administration" means modes of administration other than enteral and topical administration, usually by injection, and includes, without limitation, intravenous, intramuscular, intraarterial, intrathecal, intracapsular, intraorbital, intracardiac, intradermal, intraperitoneal, transtracheal, subcutaneous, subcuticular, intraarticular, subcapsular, subarachnoid, intraspinal, epidural and intrasternal injection and infusion. Alternatively, the pharmaceutical composition can be administered via a non-parenteral route, such as a topical, epidermal or mucosal route of administration, for example, intranasally, orally, vaginally, rectally, sublingually or topically.

Pharmaceutical compositions can be in the form of sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions. They can also be formulated in a microemulsion, liposome, or other ordered structure suitable to achieve high drug concentration. The compositions can also be provided in the form of lyophilates, for reconstitution in water prior to administration.

The amount of active ingredient which can be combined with a carrier material to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the subject being treated and the

particular mode of administration and will generally be that amount of the composition which produces a therapeutic effect. Generally, out of one hundred per cent, this amount will range from about 0.01 per cent to about ninety-nine percent of active ingredient, preferably from about 0.1 per cent to about 70 per cent, most preferably from about 1 per cent to about 5 30 per cent of active ingredient in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Dosage regimens are adjusted to provide a therapeutic response. For example, a single bolus may be administered, several divided doses may be administered over time, or the dose may be proportionally reduced or increased as indicated by the exigencies of the situation. It is especially advantageous to formulate parenteral compositions in dosage unit 10 form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. "Dosage unit form" refers to physically discrete units suited as unitary dosages for the subjects to be treated; each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active compound calculated to produce the desired therapeutic response, in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier.

The dosage ranges from about 0.0001 to 100 mg/kg, and more usually 0.01 to 5 15 mg/kg, of the host body weight. For example dosages can be 0.3 mg/kg body weight, 1 mg/kg body weight, 3 mg/kg body weight, 5 mg/kg body weight or 10 mg/kg body weight or within the range of 1-10 mg/kg, or alternatively 0.1 to 5 mg/kg. Exemplary treatment regimens are administration once per week, once every two weeks, once every three weeks, once every four weeks, once a month, once every 3 months, or once every three to 6 months. 20 Preferred dosage regimens include 1 mg/kg body weight or 3 mg/kg body weight via intravenous administration, using one of the following dosing schedules: (i) every four weeks for six dosages, then every three months; (ii) every three weeks; (iii) 3 mg/kg body weight once followed by 1 mg/kg body weight every three weeks. In some methods, dosage is adjusted to achieve a plasma antibody concentration of about 1-1000 µg/mL and in some 25 methods about 25-300 µg /mL.

A "therapeutically effective amount" of a compound of the invention preferably results in a decrease in severity of disease symptoms, an increase in frequency and duration of disease symptom-free periods, or a prevention of impairment or disability due to the disease affliction. For example, for the treatment of tumor-bearing subjects, a 30 "therapeutically effective amount" preferably inhibits tumor growth by at least about 20%, more preferably by at least about 40%, even more preferably by at least about 60%, and still more preferably by at least about 80% relative to untreated subjects. A therapeutically

effective amount of a therapeutic compound can decrease tumor size, or otherwise ameliorate symptoms in a subject, which is typically a human but can be another mammal.

The pharmaceutical composition can be a controlled or sustained release formulation, including implants, transdermal patches, and microencapsulated delivery systems. Biodegradable, biocompatible polymers can be used, such as ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, collagen, polyorthoesters, and polylactic acid. See, *e.g.*, *Sustained and Controlled Release Drug Delivery Systems*, J.R. Robinson, ed., Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1978.

Therapeutic compositions can be administered via medical devices such as (1) needleless hypodermic injection devices (*e.g.*, US 5,399,163; 5,383,851; 5,312,335; 5,064,413; 4,941,880; 4,790,824; and 4,596,556); (2) micro-infusion pumps (US 4,487,603); (3) transdermal devices (US 4,486,194); (4) infusion apparatus (US 4,447,233 and 4,447,224); and (5) osmotic devices (US 4,439,196 and 4,475,196); the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

In certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition can be formulated to ensure proper distribution *in vivo*. For example, to ensure that the therapeutic compounds of the invention cross the blood-brain barrier, they can be formulated in liposomes, which may additionally comprise targeting moieties to enhance selective transport to specific cells or organs. See, *e.g.* US 4,522,811; 5,374,548; 5,416,016; and 5,399,331; V.V. Ranade (1989) *J. Clin. Pharmacol.* 29:685; Umezawa *et al.*, (1988) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 153:1038; Bloeman *et al.* (1995) *FEBS Lett.* 357:140; M. Owais *et al.* (1995) *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 39:180; Briscoe *et al.* (1995) *Am. J. Physiol.* 1233:134; Schreier *et al.* (1994) *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:9090; Keinänen and Laukkanen (1994) *FEBS Lett.* 346:123; and Killion and Fidler (1994) *Immunomethods* 4:273.

## USES

Compounds of this invention or their conjugates can be used for treating diseases such as, but not limited to, hyperproliferative diseases, including: cancers of the head and neck which include tumors of the head, neck, nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, nasopharynx, oral cavity, oropharynx, larynx, hypopharynx, salivary glands, and paragangliomas; cancers of the liver and biliary tree, particularly hepatocellular carcinoma; intestinal cancers, particularly colorectal cancer; ovarian cancer; small cell and non-small cell lung cancer (SCLC and NSCLC); breast cancer sarcomas, such as fibrosarcoma, malignant fibrous histiocytoma,



embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma, leiomyosarcoma, neurofibrosarcoma, osteosarcoma, synovial sarcoma, liposarcoma, and alveolar soft part sarcoma; leukemias such as acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL), acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), and chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML); neoplasms of the central nervous systems, particularly brain cancer; multiple myeloma (MM), lymphomas such as Hodgkin's lymphoma, lymphoplasmacytoid lymphoma, follicular lymphoma, mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma, B-lineage large cell lymphoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, and T-cell anaplastic large cell lymphoma. Clinically, practice of the methods and use of compositions described herein will result in a reduction in the size or number of the cancerous growth and/ or a reduction in associated symptoms (where applicable). Pathologically, practice of the method and use of compositions described herein will produce a pathologically relevant response, such as: inhibition of cancer cell proliferation, reduction in the size of the cancer or tumor, prevention of further metastasis, and inhibition of tumor angiogenesis. The method of treating such diseases comprises administering a therapeutically effective amount of an inventive combination to a subject. The method may be repeated as necessary. Especially, the cancer can be renal, lung, gastric, or ovarian cancer.

Compounds of this invention or their conjugates can be administered in combination with other therapeutic agents, including antibodies, alkylating agents, angiogenesis inhibitors, antimetabolites, DNA cleavers, DNA crosslinkers, DNA intercalators, DNA minor groove binders, enediynes, heat shock protein 90 inhibitors, histone deacetylase inhibitors, immunomodulators, microtubule stabilizers, nucleoside (purine or pyrimidine) analogs, nuclear export inhibitors, proteasome inhibitors, topoisomerase (I or II) inhibitors, tyrosine kinase inhibitors, and serine/threonine kinase inhibitors. Specific therapeutic agents include adalimumab, ansamitocin P3, auristatin, bendamustine, bevacizumab, bicalutamide, bleomycin, bortezomib, busulfan, callistatin A, camptothecin, capecitabine, carboplatin, carmustine, cetuximab, cisplatin, cladribin, cytarabin, cryptophycins, dacarbazine, dasatinib, daunorubicin, docetaxel, doxorubicin, duocarmycin, dynemycin A, epothilones, etoposide, floxuridine, fludarabine, 5-fluorouracil, gefitinib, gemcitabine, ipilimumab, hydroxyurea, imatinib, infliximab, interferons, interleukins,  $\beta$ -lapachone, lenalidomide, irinotecan, maytansine, mechlorethamine, melphalan, 6-mercaptopurine, methotrexate, mitomycin C, nilotinib, oxaliplatin, paclitaxel,

procarbazine, suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid (SAHA), 6-thioguanidine, thiotepa, teniposide, topotecan, trastuzumab, trichostatin A, vinblastine, vincristine, and vindesine.

#### EXAMPLES

The practice of this invention can be further understood by reference to the following examples, which are provided by way of illustration and not of limitation. The following general procedures are illustrative, with those skilled in the art understanding that alternative but equivalent methods can be used.

Some <sup>1</sup>H-NMR spectra were run on Bruker 600, 500, or 400 MHz instruments and chemical shifts were reported in ppm (δ) with reference to tetramethylsilane (δ=0.0).

Generally, evaporations were carried out under reduced pressure.

These two LC/MS analysis methods are illustrative:

A Column: Waters BEH C18, 2.0 x 50 mm, 1.7-μm particles; Mobile Phase A: water with 0.05%TFA; Mobile Phase B: acetonitrile with 0.05%TFA; [2-98% in 1.5 min, with a 3 min run time]; Temperature: 40 °C; Flow: 0.8 mL/min. and a UV detector set at 220 or 254nm.

B Column: PhenomenexLuna, 2.0 x 30 mm, 3-μm particles; Mobile Phase A: 10% acetonitrile/90% water with 0.1%TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90% acetonitrile/10% water with 0.1%TFA;; [0-100% in 2 min, with a 4 min run time]; Temperature: 40 °C; Flow: 1.0 mL/min. and a UV detector set at 220 or 254nm.

#### Example 1 – Intermediate compound 6

This example and **Fig. 1** relate to the synthesis of intermediate compound **6**, which is used for the preparation of dimers of this invention.

4-(Benzyloxy)-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl chloride **1** was prepared from the corresponding methyl ester as follows: To a solution of methyl 4-(benzyloxy)-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoate (Harve Chem, 15 g, 47.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (THF, 350 mL) was added a solution of aq. NaOH (56.7 mL, 142 mmol, 2.5M). The reaction was stirred at 50 °C for 5 h. The reaction was cooled to room temperature (RT) and then concentrated *in vacuo* to remove the THF. The remaining aqueous layer was acidified with aq. HCl (6 N) to pH 2. The resulting yellow precipitate was filtered, washed with water, and dried under vacuum to give 4-(benzyloxy)-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoic acid (14.32 g, 100% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 304.08. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, METHANOL-d<sub>4</sub>) δ 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.53 - 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.45 - 7.31 (m, 3H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 5.23 (s, 2H), 3.98 (s, 3H).

To a solution of the above nitrobenzoic acid (3.5 g, 11.54 mmol) in THF (150 mL) was added dropwise oxalyl chloride (1.212 mL, 13.85 mmol), followed by N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF, 50  $\mu$ L). The resulting solution was stirred at RT for 2 h before it was concentrated *in vacuo* to give acid chloride **1** as a yellow solid.

5            Acid chloride **1** was dissolved in THF (35 mL) and added dropwise to a solution of (*S*)-benzyl 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylate p-toluenesulfonic acid salt **2** (Accela, 5.58 g, 12.70 mmol) and triethylamine (4.83 mL, 34.6 mmol) in THF (80 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 4 h before quenching with water and concentrated to remove the THF. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The  
10   combined organic layers were washed with sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and then brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (80 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/dichloromethane (DCM) in 15 minutes) to give ester **3** (6.25 g, 98% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 553. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.95 - 7.72 (m, 1H), 7.57 - 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.34 - 7.0 (m,  
15   8H), 7.14 - 6.98 (m, 1H), 6.94 - 6.69 (m, 1H), 5.39 - 5.19 (m, 2H), 5.19 - 5.08 (m, 1H), 4.99 (q, *J*=12.4 Hz, 1H), 4.75 (d, *J*=17.4 Hz, 1H), 4.65 - 4.40 (m, 2H), 4.28 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (br. s., 3H), 3.71 (s, 1H), 3.50 - 3.18 (m, 1H).

A suspension of ester **3** (6.25 g, 11.31 mmol), zinc (4.44 g, 67.9 mmol), and NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (7.26 g, 136 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was heated at 50 °C for 16 h. The reaction was  
20   cooled to RT and diluted with MeOH. The resulting mixture was filtered through a pad of CELITE™, washing successively with EtOAc, DCM and MeOH. The filtrates were combined and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (120 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/DCM in 15 minutes) to give dione **4** (4.5 g, 96% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 415. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz,  
25   CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.49 - 7.40 (m, 4H), 7.32 (br. s., 6H), 6.45 (s, 1H), 5.19 (s, 2H), 5.13 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.47 (d, *J*=15.2 Hz, 1H), 4.21 (t, *J*=6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.52 (dd, *J*=15.4, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 3.02 (dd, *J*=15.4, 6.4 Hz, 1H).

A solution of dione **4** (4.5 g, 10.86 mmol) in DMF (54.3 mL) was cooled to 0 °C before NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 0.54 g, 13.57 mmol) was added batchwise. The  
30   resulting mixture was stirred for 30 min before (2-(chloromethoxy)ethyl)trimethylsilane (SEM-Cl, 2.31 mL, 13.03 mmol) was added. The reaction was warmed to RT and stirred for 1 h before quenching with water. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude

product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (80 g column, gradient from 0% to 50% EtOAc/DCM in 15 min) to give SEM-dione **5** (4.60 g, 78% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 545. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.59 - 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.40 - 7.21 (m, 9H), 5.43 (d,  $J=9.9$  Hz, 1H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 5.14 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.50 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.41 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.33 - 4.16 (m, 1H), 4.13 (d,  $J=7.3$  Hz, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.82 - 3.46 (m, 3H), 3.06 - 2.84 (m, 1H), 1.26 (t,  $J=7.2$  Hz, 1H), 0.97 (ddd,  $J=9.9, 6.8, 2.6$  Hz, 2H), 0.10 - 0.01 (m, 9H).

A suspension of SEM-dione **5** (4.68 g, 8.59 mmol) and Pd/C (10%, 0.457 g) in EtOH (10 mL) was stirred under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> at RT for 3 h. The reaction was filtered through a CELITE™ pad, washed with EtOH, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (120 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/DCM in 15 min) to give compound **6** (3.23 g, 83% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 455. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.40 - 7.21 (m, 5H), 5.97 (s, 1H), 5.46 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.72 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.58 - 4.24 (m, 2H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.83 - 3.44 (m, 3H), 3.14 - 2.88 (m, 1H), 0.99 (t,  $J=8.0$  Hz, 2H), 0.14 (s, 9H).

#### Example 2 – Intermediate compound 13

This example and **Fig. 2** relate to the synthesis of intermediate compound **13**, used in the preparation of dimers of this invention.

Acid chloride **1** was dissolved in THF (30 mL) and added dropwise to a solution of carboxylate **7** (Borzilleri *et al.*, WO 2014/047024 A1 (2014), 1.6 g, 6.39 mmol) and NEt<sub>3</sub> (2.67 mL, 19.2 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction solution was slowly warmed to RT and stirred for 30 min. The reaction was quenched with water and concentrated to remove THF. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, then brine, and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (80 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/Hexane in 15 min) to give ethyl ester **8** (2.66 g, 78% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 536.4.

A suspension of ethyl ester **8** (1.75 g, 3.55 mmol), zinc (1.394 g, 21.32 mmol), and NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (2.281 g, 42.6 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) was heated at 50 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of CELITE™, washing with copious amount of 20% MeOH in DCM. The filtrate was concentrated to give amino-dione **9** as a white solid (1.25 g, 2.90 mmol, 82% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 430.3 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$

10.26 (br. s., 1H), 7.53 - 7.31 (m, 6H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 6.92 (d,  $J=7.9$  Hz, 1H), 6.78 (s, 1H), 6.50 - 6.41 (m, 2H), 5.07 (d,  $J=4.6$  Hz, 2H), 5.00 - 4.88 (m, 2H), 4.84 (d,  $J=15.0$  Hz, 1H), 4.09 (d,  $J=15.0$  Hz, 1H), 4.01 (t,  $J=6.9$  Hz, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.12 (dd,  $J=15.3$ , 7.6 Hz, 1H), 2.78 (dd,  $J=15.2$ , 6.2 Hz, 1H).

5 To a solution of amino-dione **9** (1.6 g, 3.73 mmol) and trityl chloride (1.246 g, 4.47 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added  $\text{NEt}_3$  (0.779 mL, 5.59 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 3 h and concentrated. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (80 g column, 0-50% EtOAc/Hexane) to give trityl-dione **10** as a white solid (2.2 g, 3.27 mmol, 88% yield).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM- $d$ )  $\delta$  8.01 (s, 1H), 7.50 - 7.12 (m, 22H), 6.77 (d,  $J=8.4$  Hz, 1H), 6.47 - 6.34 (m, 2H), 6.16 (dd,  $J=8.1$ , 2.4 Hz, 1H), 5.02 (br. s., 1H), 4.91 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.18 - 4.09 (m, 2H), 4.05 (t,  $J=6.9$  Hz, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.28 (dd,  $J=15.4$ , 7.7 Hz, 1H), 2.75 (dd,  $J=15.4$ , 6.4 Hz, 1H).

To a solution of trityl-dione **10** (2.2 g, 3.27 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) at 0 °C was added NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 0.236 g, 3.93 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 15 30 min before SEM-Cl (0.697 mL, 3.93 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h before it was quenched with brine. The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, 0-50% EtOAc/Hexane) to give SEM-dione **11** (2.1 g, 2.62 mmol, 80% yield).

20 LCMS (M-trityl) = 560.4  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM- $d$ )  $\delta$  7.48 - 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.41 - 7.32 (m, 9H), 7.31 - 7.18 (m, 11H), 6.77 (d,  $J=8.1$  Hz, 1H), 6.38 (d,  $J=2.2$  Hz, 1H), 6.19 (dd,  $J=8.3$ , 2.3 Hz, 1H), 5.45 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 5.08 - 4.92 (m, 2H), 4.49 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.13 - 4.08 (m, 1H), 4.02 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.71 (td,  $J=9.6$ , 7.0 Hz, 1H), 3.61 (td,  $J=9.6$ , 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.36 (dd,  $J=15.5$ , 8.3 Hz, 1H), 2.72 (dd,  $J=15.5$ , 6.5 Hz, 1H), 1.05 - 0.92 (m, 2H), 0.06 (s, 9H).

25 A suspension of SEM-dione **11** (950mg, 1.18 mmol) and Pd/C (10%, 200 mg) in EtOAc (20 mL) was stirred under a balloon of  $\text{H}_2$  for 2 days. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of CELITE<sup>TM</sup> and washed with EtOAc and then MeOH. The combined filtrates were concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, 30 0-100% EtOAc/Hexane) to give compound **12** (510 mg, 1.08 mmol, 90% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 470.2  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM- $d$ )  $\delta$  7.33 (s, 1H), 7.27 (s, 1H), 7.09 (d,  $J=8.6$  Hz, 1H), 6.67 - 6.54 (m, 2H), 6.02 (s, 1H), 5.47 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.11 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.71 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.29 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.22 (dd,  $J=7.7$ , 6.5 Hz, 1H), 3.94

(s, 3H), 3.79 - 3.60 (m, 4H), 3.47 (dd,  $J=15.4, 7.7$  Hz, 1H), 2.90 (dd,  $J=15.5, 6.4$  Hz, 1H), 1.09 - 0.94 (m, 2H), 0.05 (s, 9H).

To a solution of compound **12** (500 mg, 1.065 mmol) in THF (3 mL) at 0 °C was added NEt<sub>3</sub> (0.742 mL, 5.32 mmol). Allyl chloroformate **12a** (513 mg, 4.26 mmol) was added dropwise. The resulting solution was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h. The reaction was diluted with MeOH (5mL) and aq. LiOH (2 mL, 2N) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 16 h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc and washed with brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by ISCO silica gel chromatography (24 g column, 0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give compound **13** as a white solid (440 mg, 0.795 mmol, 74.6% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 554.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.38 - 7.30 (m, 3H), 7.27 - 7.21 (m, 2H), 6.96 (s, 1H), 6.28 (s, 1H), 6.02 - 5.89 (m, 1H), 5.44 (d,  $J=9.8$  Hz, 1H), 5.35 (dq,  $J=17.2, 1.5$  Hz, 1H), 5.26 (dq,  $J=10.4, 1.3$  Hz, 1H), 5.10 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.70 (d,  $J=9.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.66 (d,  $J=5.1$  Hz, 2H), 4.40 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.31 - 4.23 (m, 1H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.79 - 3.58 (m, 2H), 3.51 (dd,  $J=15.6, 7.3$  Hz, 1H), 2.96 (dd,  $J=15.5, 6.4$  Hz, 1H), 1.07 - 0.95 (m, 2H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

### Example 3 – Intermediate compound 19

This example and **Fig. 3** relate to the synthesis of compound **19**, used as an intermediate for the synthesis of dimers of this invention.

Acid chloride **1** was dissolved in THF (30 mL) and added dropwise to a solution of carboxylate **14** (Buchstaller *et al.*, US 2007/0191423 A1 (2007), 1.6 g, 5.21 mmol) and NEt<sub>3</sub> (2.9 mL, 20.8 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction solution was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h before it was quenched with water. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, and then dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting mixture was then taken up in MeOH (50 mL). Potassium carbonate (1 g) was added. The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 1 h before it was filtered through a pad of CELITE™ and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (220 g column, gradient from 0% to 50% EtOAc/Hexane in 15 min) to give ester **15** (1.75 g g, 68% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 493.1.

A suspension of ester **15** (1.75 g, 3.55 mmol), zinc (1.394 g, 21.32 mmol), and NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (2.281 g, 42.6 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) and heated at 50 °C overnight. The reaction

mixture was then filtered through a pad of CELITE™, washing with 20% MeOH/DCM. The filtrate was concentrated to give compound **16** (1.25 g, 2.90 mmol, 82% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 431.3. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 10.25 (br. s., 1H), 9.26 (s, 1H), 7.53 - 7.32 (m, 5H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.07 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 6.71 - 6.60 (m, 2H), 5.08 (d, J=4.0 Hz, 2H), 4.83 (d, J=15.2 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (d, J=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.08 (t, J=6.7 Hz, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.16 (dd, J=15.4, 6.8 Hz, 1H), 2.85 (dd, J=15.1, 6.3 Hz, 1H).

To a solution of compound **16** (1.25 g, 2.90 mmol) in DCM (40 mL) was added pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate (PPTS, 0.073 g, 0.290 mmol) and tetrahydropyran (THP, 2.84 mL, 29.0 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT overnight and was then quenched with sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The resulting mixture was extracted with DCM (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column 0-100% EtOAc/Hexane) to give compound **17** as a white solid (1.15 g, 2.235 mmol, 77% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 515.3.

To a cooled solution of compound **17** (1.2 g, 2.332 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 0.168 g, 2.80 mmol). The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 15 min and then warmed to RT and stirred for 10 min before it was cooled back to 0 °C. SEM-Cl (0.496 mL, 2.80 mmol) was then added. The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min before it was allowed to warm to RT and stirred for 1 h. The reaction was then quenched with brine. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, 0-50% EtOAc/Hexane) to give compound **18** (875 mg, 1.357 mmol, 58.2%). LCMS (M+H) = 645.5. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.48 - 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.39 - 7.28 (m, 4H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.19 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.02 - 6.92 (m, 2H), 5.51 - 5.32 (m, 2H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 5.12 (dd, J=15.3, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 4.50 (dd, J=9.8, 1.7 Hz, 1H), 4.33 (dd, J=15.3, 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (ddd, J=7.4, 6.5, 4.3 Hz, 1H), 3.91 (s, 4H), 3.76 - 3.56 (m, 3H), 3.47 (dd, J=15.4, 7.7 Hz, 1H), 2.92 (dd, J=15.4, 6.4 Hz, 1H), 2.03 - 1.92 (m, 1H), 1.88 - 1.81 (m, 2H), 1.74 - 1.57 (m, 3H), 0.97 (ddd, J=9.7, 6.8, 2.6 Hz, 2H), 0.09 - 0.01 (m, 9H).

A suspension of compound **18** (875mg, 1.357 mmol) and Pd/C (10%, 87 mg) in EtOAc (10 mL) stirred under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> for 2 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered through a pad of CELITE™ and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, 0-100% EtOAc/Hexane) to give compound **19** as a white solid (485 mg, 0.874 mmol, 64.4% yield). LCMS (M+H) =

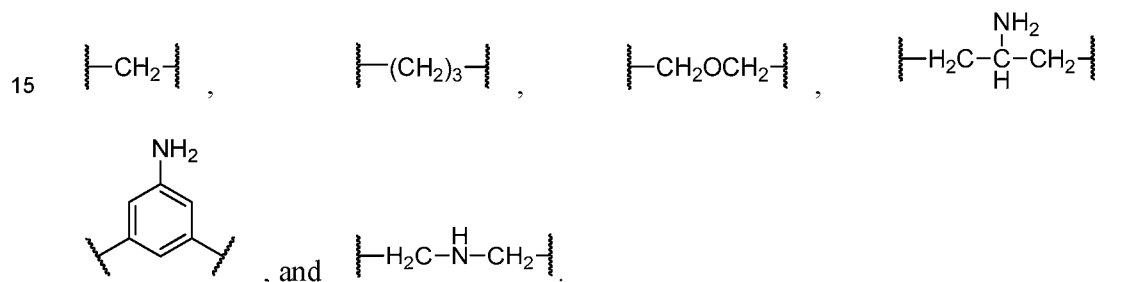
555.1.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM- $d$ )  $\delta$  7.33 (d,  $J=0.7$  Hz, 1H), 7.27 (s, 1H), 7.22 (d,  $J=8.1$  Hz, 1H), 7.04 - 6.95 (m, 2H), 6.01 (s, 1H), 5.46 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.44 - 5.34 (m, 1H), 5.16 (dd,  $J=15.3, 2.6$  Hz, 1H), 4.71 (dd,  $J=9.7, 1.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.35 (dd,  $J=15.3, 4.5$  Hz, 1H), 4.25 (ddd,  $J=7.7, 6.4, 4.0$  Hz, 1H), 4.01 - 3.87 (m, 4H), 3.80 - 3.59 (m, 3H), 3.52 (dd,  $J=15.5, 7.8$  Hz, 1H), 2.95 (dd,  $J=15.5, 6.4$  Hz, 1H), 2.05 - 1.96 (m, 1H), 1.92 - 1.82 (m, 2H), 1.77 - 1.62 (m, 3H), 1.06 - 0.97 (m, 2H), 0.05 (s, 9H).

*Example 4 – Symmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers*

**Fig 4** shows a generic scheme for making symmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers. The bridge connecting the two monomer halves derives from compound **20a**.



The groups  $\text{X}^5$  are leaving groups, such as I, Br, Cl, mesylate, and tosylate. The group  $\text{R}^{\text{X}}$  allows for structural variability in the bridge. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that, in certain instances, functional groups in  $\text{R}^{\text{X}}$  may need to be protected and de-protected as needed during the course of synthesis. Exemplary groups  $\text{R}^{\text{X}}$  include:



20 Although the scheme of **Fig. 4** has general applicability, the aromatic ring in the THIQ ring system has been depicted as unsubstituted for the sake of simplicity. Those skilled in the art will understand that it can bear substituents as defined hereinabove.

Following the concept of **Fig. 4**, compound (**IIa-02**) was synthesized as follows.

A suspension of compound **6** (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) and 1,5-diiodopentane (17.8 mg, 0.055 mmol) and  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$  (15.2 mg, 0.11 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) were stirred at RT for 14 h. The reaction mixture was then diluted with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (12 g column, gradient from 0% to 10% MeOH/DCM in 15 minutes) to give compound **21** where each  $\text{R}^9$  is H (22 mg, 21% yield). LCMS ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) = 977.8.



To a solution of the product of the preceding reaction (22mg, 0.023 mmol) in THF/EtOH (1:1, 1 mL) was added a solution of LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF (2M, 116  $\mu$ L, 0.232 mmol) at 0 °C. The reaction was slowly warmed to RT and stirred for 15 min before it was quenched with brine. The resulting mixture was extracted with chloroform. The combined organic  
 5 layers were washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was then taken up in EtOH/chloroform (1:1, 2 mL). Silica gel (700 mg) was added, followed by water (0.6 mL). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 24 h and then filtered, washing with 10% MeOH/chloroform. The filtrate was concentrated and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A:  
 10 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid (TFA); Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA acid; Gradient: 20-70% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-02**) (7.5 mg, 9.86  $\mu$ mol, 43.8% yield) LCMS M+H=685.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 2H), 7.49 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.42 - 7.31 (m, 8H), 6.82 (s, 2H), 5.03 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 2H), 4.58 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H),  
 15 4.26 - 4.04 (m, 4H), 4.00 - 3.92 (m, 8H), 3.37 - 3.25 (m, 2H), 3.21 - 3.10 (m, 2H), 2.02 - 1.90 (m, 4H), 1.70 (d, *J*=7.3 Hz, 2H).

Following the general scheme of **Fig. 4**, additional symmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers were synthesized:

- (a) Dimer (**IIa-01**) from compound **6** and 1,3-dibromopropane: LCMS M+H = 657.2. <sup>1</sup>H  
 20 NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 2H), 7.49 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.42 - 7.30 (m, 8H), 6.87 (s, 2H), 5.03 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 2H), 4.58 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H), 4.31 (tdd, *J*=9.6, 6.1, 3.6 Hz, 4H), 3.95 (s, 6H), 3.94 (s, 2H), 3.37 - 3.24 (m, 2H), 3.21 - 3.10 (m, 2H), 2.44 (t, *J*=6.1 Hz, 2H).
- (b) Dimer (**IIa-07**) from compound **6** and 1-iodo-2-(2-iodoethoxy)ethane: LCMS M+H =  
 25 687.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 2H), 7.49 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.40 - 7.31 (m, 8H), 6.86 (s, 2H), 5.02 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H), 4.58 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H), 4.36 - 4.18 (m, 4H), 4.07 - 4.00 (m, 4H), 3.97 - 3.92 (m, 8H), 3.35 - 3.24 (m, 2H), 3.22 - 3.12 (m, 2H).
- (c) Dimer (**IIa-08**) from compound **13** and 1,5-diiodopentane: LCMS M+H = 883.3. <sup>1</sup>H  
 30 NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 2H), 7.49 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.44 - 7.33 (m, 6H), 6.81 (s, 2H), 6.69 (s, 2H), 6.00 (dd, *J*=17.1, 10.5 Hz, 2H), 5.40 (dd, *J*=17.3, 1.4 Hz, 2H), 5.30 (dd, *J*=10.5, 1.2 Hz, 2H), 5.01 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 2H), 4.71 (d,

$J=5.5$  Hz, 4H), 4.53 (d,  $J=15.6$  Hz, 2H), 3.96 (s, 6H), 3.31 - 3.19 (m, 2H), 3.17 - 3.06 (m, 2H), 1.97 (br. s., 4H), 1.75 - 1.66 (m, 2H).

*Example 5 – Compound (IIa-05)*

This example and **Fig. 4a** relate to the synthesis of compound **(IIa-05)**

5 ((6a*S*,6a'*S*)-3,3'-(((5-amino-1,3-phenylene)bis(methylene))bis(oxy))bis(2-methoxy-6a,7-dihydrobenzo[5,6][1,4]diazepino[1,2-*b*]isoquinolin-14(12H)-one)), again following the general synthetic scheme of **Fig. 4**, but entailing a protection-deprotection cycle as shown:

A suspension of 5-nitro-*m*-xylene- $\alpha,\alpha$ -diol **24a** (Aldrich, 1g, 5.46 mmol) and Pd/C (291 mg, 0.273 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was stirred under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> for 2 hours  
10 at RT. The reaction was filtered through CELITE™, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude 5-amino-1,3-phenylene)dimethanol **24b** was used in the next step without further purification. LCMS (M+H) = 154.

To a suspension of dimethanol **24b** (600 mg, 3.92 mmol), K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (650 mg, 4.7 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 0 °C was added allyl chloroformate **12a** (0.5 mL, 4.7 mmol). The  
15 reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min before it was allowed to warm up to RT and stirred at RT for 3 h. The reaction was then quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (2x). The organic layer was dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/DCM in 15 min) to give allyl carbamate **24c** (200 mg, 21.5% yield). LCMS (M+23)  
20 = 261. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$  7.31 (s, 2H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 5.99 (ddt,  $J=17.2$ , 10.6, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 5.36 (dq,  $J=17.2$ , 1.6 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (dq,  $J=10.6$ , 1.4 Hz, 1H), 5.13 (t,  $J=5.7$  Hz, 2H), 4.60 (dt,  $J=5.4$ , 1.3 Hz, 2H), 4.44 (d,  $J=5.5$  Hz, 4H).

A suspension of the above allyl carbamate (462.5 mg, 1.949 mmol) and triethylamine (0.815 mL, 5.85 mmol) in DCM (20 mL) was cooled to -10 °C and treated with  
25 methanesulfonyl chloride (Ms-Cl, 0.395 mL, 5.07 mmol). The organic layer was washed with ice cold water, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo* to give dimethanesulfonate **24d** (750 mg, 95% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 394. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-*d*)  $\delta$  7.52 (s, 2H), 7.15 (s, 1H), 7.04 (s, 1H), 6.09 - 5.87 (m, 1H), 5.39 (dd,  $J=17.2$ , 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.29 (dd,  $J=10.3$ , 1.3 Hz, 1H), 5.21 (s, 4H), 4.69 (dt,  $J=5.7$ , 1.2 Hz, 2H), 3.02 (s, 6H).

30 A solution of dimethanesulfonate **24d** (135 mg, 0.343 mmol) in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO, 16 mL) was treated with compound **6** (312 mg, 0.686 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (142 mg, 1.029 mmol) at RT for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc

(3x). The mixture was dried and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, gradient from 0% to 100% EtOAc/Hexane in 15 min) to give carbamate **24e** (250 mg, 66% yield). LCMS (M+1) = 1110. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.51 (s, 2H), 7.38 - 7.13 (m, 14H), 6.96 - 6.75 (m, 1H), 6.12 - 5.86 (m, 1H), 5.48 (d, *J*=10.1 Hz, 2H), 5.43 - 5.32 (m, 1H), 5.32 - 5.23 (m, 1H), 5.23 - 4.99 (m, 6H), 4.74 - 4.53 (m, 4H), 4.41 (d, *J*=15.2 Hz, 2H), 4.30 (d, *J*=0.9 Hz, 2H), 3.96 - 3.83 (m, 6H), 3.81 - 3.46 (m, 6H), 2.98 (s, 2H), 1.14 - 0.85 (m, 4H), 0.13 - 0.08 (m, 18H).

To a solution of carbamate **24e** (200 mg, 0.180 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at 0°C was added Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub> (8.33 mg, 7.20  $\mu$ mol) and morpholine (0.038 mL, 0.432 mmol). The reaction was stirred at 0° C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with sat. aq. ammonium chloride (5 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (10 mL). The organic layer was washed with saturated aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and then saturated aq. NaCl, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, gradient from 0% to 10% Methanol /DCM in 15 minutes) to give compound **24f** (160 mg, 87% yield). LCMS (M+1) = 1026. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.38 - 7.30 (m, 6H), 7.28 (d, *J*=5.1 Hz, 7H), 6.92 - 6.85 (m, 1H), 6.76 (d, *J*=1.1 Hz, 2H), 5.47 (d, *J*=10.1 Hz, 2H), 5.18 (d, *J*=15.2 Hz, 2H), 5.08 (d, *J*=8.6 Hz, 4H), 4.65 (d, *J*=10.1 Hz, 2H), 4.42 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H), 4.30 (d, *J*=0.9 Hz, 2H), 3.92 (s, 6H), 3.82 - 3.50 (m, 8H), 3.09 - 2.94 (m, 2H), 1.11 - 0.88 (m, 4H), 0.10 - 0.03 (m, 18H).

To a 0 °C solution of compound **24f** (22 mg, 0.021 mmol) in THF (233  $\mu$ L) and EtOH (233  $\mu$ L) was added a solution of LiBH<sub>4</sub> (214  $\mu$ L, 0.429 mmol, 2M in THF). The reaction was slowly warmed to RT and stirred at RT for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with water and extracted with chloroform (2x), then chloroform/MeOH (2x). The combined organic extracts were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in chloroform/EtOH/water (1:1:1, 2 mL), silica gel (0.7 g) was added, and the reaction was stirred for 3 days at RT. The reaction mixture was filtered through a CELITE™ plug, washing with chloroform, and the solution was concentrated. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 20-80% B over 20 min; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-05**), isolated as a light yellow solid (8.1 mg, 46.3% yield). LCMS (M+1) = 734. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.57 (s, 1H), 7.47 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.43 - 7.30

(m, 4H), 6.99 - 6.79 (m, 1H), 6.73 (s, 1H), 5.40 - 4.90 (m, 4H), 4.59 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.17 - 3.85 (m, 4H), 3.39 - 3.05 (m, 2H).

*Example 6 – Reduction of imine double bonds*

This example describes the preparation of various THIQ-THIQ dimers with one  
5 or both imine bonds reduced.

In the first section of this example, the dimers prepared were **(IIa-03)** and **(IIa-04)**.

To a solution of dimer **(IIa-01)** (6mg, 9.14  $\mu$ mol) in THF (0.7 mL) at 0 °C was added NaBH<sub>4</sub> (0.691 mg, 0.018 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for 40 min before  
10 it was quenched with water. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x). The organic layers were combined and concentrated *in vacuo*. Dimers **(IIa-03)** (LCMS (M+1): 659.1) and **(IIa-04)** (LCMS (M+1): 661.1) were separated by reverse phase HPLC (Column : Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 15-60% B over 20  
15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm).

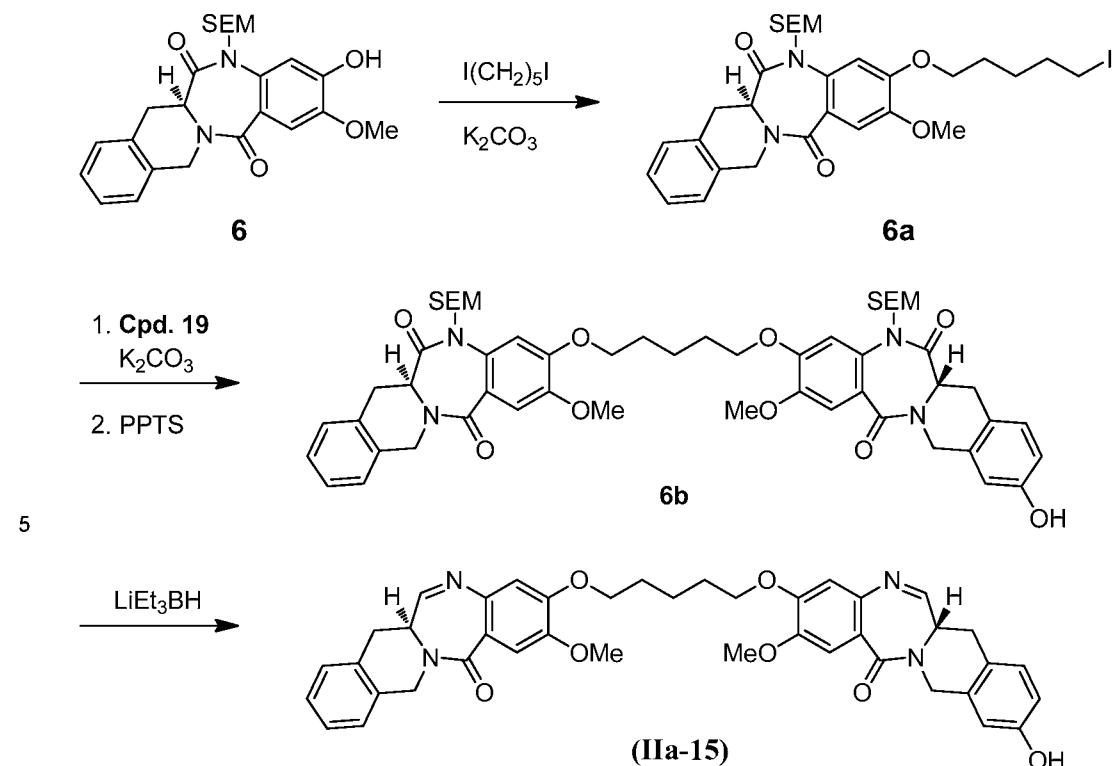
In the next section of this example, (6a*S*,6a'*S*)-3,3'-(pentane-1,5-diylbis(oxy))bis(2-methoxy-5,6,6a,7-tetrahydrobenzo[5,6][1,4] diazepino[1,2-*b*]isoquinolin-14(12H)-one) **(IIa-06)** was prepared: To a solution of dimer **(IIa-02)** (28 mg, 0.041 mmol) in THF/MeOH (1:1, 1 mL) was added NaBH<sub>4</sub> (1.548 mg, 0.041 mmol). The reaction was  
20 stirred at RT for 2 h. A second batch of NaBH<sub>4</sub> (1.548 mg, 0.041 mmol) was added, and the reaction was stirred at RT overnight. The reaction was then quenched with water and extracted with DCM. The combined organic layers were concentrated and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column : Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA;  
25 Gradient: 20-80% B over 20 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give compound **(IIa-06)** (4.2 mg, 5.49  $\mu$ mol, 13.41% yield; LCMS (M+1): 689.2).

*Example 7 – Asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers*

This example relates to the synthesis of asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers. **Fig. 5** shows a general scheme for their synthesis. The groups R<sup>E</sup> and R<sup>F</sup> in the figure can be  
30 various substituents as defined hereinabove.

The first section of this example relates to the synthesis of dimer (*S*)-10-hydroxy-2-methoxy-3-(((*S*)-2-methoxy-14-oxo-6a,7,12,14-tetrahydrobenzo[5,6][1,4]

diazepino[1,2-b]isoquinolin-3-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-6a,7-dihydrobenzo[5,6][1,4]diazepino[1,2-b]isoquinolin-14(12H)-one (**IIa-15**), per the following reaction scheme:



To a suspension of compound **6** (250mg, 0.550 mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (304 mg, 2.200 mmol) in DMSO (5 mL) was added 1,5-diiodopentane (891 mg, 2.75 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 2 h before it was diluted with EtOAc and washed with brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over  $Na_2SO_4$ , and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (12 g column, gradient 0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give compound **6a** as a yellow oil (275 mg, 0.423 mmol, 77% yield). LCMS: (M+H) = 651.2  $^1H$  NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM- $d$ )  $\delta$  7.33 - 7.24 (m, 5H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 5.50 (d,  $J=9.9$  Hz, 1H), 5.15 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.66 (d,  $J=9.9$  Hz, 1H), 4.41 (d,  $J=15.4$  Hz, 1H), 4.33 - 4.25 (m, 1H), 4.05 (d,  $J=8.6$  Hz, 2H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.80 (td,  $J=9.6$ , 6.9 Hz, 1H), 3.72 - 3.62 (m, 1H), 3.56 (dd,  $J=15.5$ , 7.4 Hz, 1H), 3.22 (t,  $J=6.9$  Hz, 2H), 3.00 (dd,  $J=15.6$ , 6.4 Hz, 1H), 1.98 - 1.80 (m, 4H), 1.67 - 1.54 (m, 2H), 0.98 (ddd,  $J=9.8$ , 6.7, 2.9 Hz, 2H), 0.04 (s, 9H).

To a solution of compound **6a** (135 mg, 0.208 mmol) and compound **19** (110 mg, 0.198 mmol) in DMSO (3 mL) was added  $K_2CO_3$  (82 mg, 0.595 mmol). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 5 h. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc and washed

with water. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in MeOH (10 mL). PPTS (~15 mg) was added, and the reaction was stirred at 40 °C for 1 h. The reaction was then concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-100% EtOAc/Hexane, 24 g column) to give compound **6b** (141 mg, 0.142 mmol, 71.6% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 993.7. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.36 - 7.29 (m, 4H), 7.27 - 7.24 (m, 1H), 7.23 - 7.10 (m, 4H), 6.94 (d, *J*=2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.79 (dd, *J*=8.1, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 5.51 (t, *J*=9.6 Hz, 2H), 5.18 (dd, *J*=19.4, 15.2 Hz, 2H), 4.69 (dd, *J*=9.9, 7.5 Hz, 2H), 4.42 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.37 - 4.26 (m, 2H), 4.22 (dd, *J*=7.7, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.09 - 4.00 (m, 3H), 3.88 (d, *J*=2.6 Hz, 6H), 3.80 (dd, *J*=7.0, 4.6 Hz, 2H), 3.68 (dd, *J*=6.8, 5.1 Hz, 2H), 3.60 - 3.43 (m, 2H), 3.10 - 2.82 (m, 2H), 2.00 - 1.87 (m, 4H), 1.69 (br. s., 2H), 0.98 (td, *J*=6.6, 3.3 Hz, 4H), 0.10 - 0.02 (m, 18H).

To a solution of compound **6b** (18 mg, 0.018 mmol) in THF (0.6 mL) at -78 °C was added a solution of lithium triethylborohydride (1 M in THF, 362 μL, 0.362 mmol). The reaction was stirred at -78 °C for 1h before it was quenched with water (1mL). The reaction was then extracted with chloroform (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was then taken up in chloroform/EtOH (1:1, 2 mL). Silical gel ( 0.8 g ) was added, followed by water (0.6 mL). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 1 day and then filtered, washing with 10% MeOH/chloroform. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column : Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 20-80% B over 20 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-15**) (4.8 mg, 6.16 μmol, 34.0% yield). LCMS (M+H) =701.2.

The synthesis of dimer (*S*)-2,10-dimethoxy-3-(((*S*)-2-methoxy-14-oxo-6a,7,12,14-tetrahydrobenzo[5,6][1,4]diazepino[1,2-*b*]isoquinolin-3-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-6a,7-dihydrobenzo [5,6][1,4]diazepine[1,2-*b*]isoquinolin-14(12H)-one (**IIa-12**) from compound **6b** was performed as follows. Compound **6b** was alkylated with iodomethane using K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, to give the corresponding methoxy product. LCMS (M+H) = 1007.6. Reduction with LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH generally following the procedure described above gave dimer (**IIa-12**). LCMS (M+H) = 715.3 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.55 (d, *J*=1.6 Hz, 2H), 7.50 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 2H), 7.41 - 7.30 (m, 5H), 6.94 - 6.86 (m, 2H), 6.81 (m, 1H), 5.01 (t, *J*=14.9 Hz, 2H), 4.67 - 4.47 (m, 2H), 4.24 - 4.01 (m, 5H), 3.96 (s, 6H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.34 - 3.02 (m, 4H), 2.02 - 1.88 (m, 4H).

Following the above procedures, *mutatis mutandis*, additional asymmetric THIQ-THIQ dimers were synthesized:

- (a) **(IIa-13)**: LCMS (M+H) = 758.3. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.55 (d,  $J=2.2$  Hz, 2H), 7.49 (dd,  $J=5.3$ , 3.4 Hz, 2H), 7.42 - 7.33 (m, 5H), 6.95 - 6.89 (m, 2H), 6.86 - 6.77 (m, 2H), 6.54 (br. s., 1H), 5.57 (br. s., 1H), 5.02 (dd,  $J=15.5$ , 10.9 Hz, 2H), 4.62-4.56 (m., 2H), 4.20-4.02 (m, 6H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.90 - 3.84 (m, 3H), 3.31 - 3.05 (m, 5H), 1.96 (m, 4H).
- (b) **(IIa-14)**: LCMS (M+H) = 803.3.
- (c) **(IIa-17)**: LCMS (M+H) = 745.2.

10 *Example 8 – Dimers with asymmetric bridge*

This example and **Fig. 6** illustrate a synthetic strategy for making dimers in which the bridge linking the two dimer halves is not bilaterally symmetric. The specific illustration is with respect to dimer **(IIa-09)**.

To a solution of benzyl (2-hydroxyethyl)carbamate **29** (Aldrich, 0.781 g, 4 mmol) and NEt<sub>3</sub> (1.115 mL, 8.00 mmol) were added *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (TsCl, 0.915 g, 4.80 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-100% EtOAc/HEX, 40 g column) to give the toluenesulfonate **30** (0.85 g, 2.43 mmol, 60.8% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 350.

To a solution of compound **6** (160mg, 0.352 mmol) and toluenesulfonate **30** (135 mg, 0.387 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (97 mg, 0.704 mmol). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 2 h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc and washed sequentially with aq. LiCl and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 24 g column) to give compound **31**. LCMS (M+H) = 632.3.

A suspension of compound **31** and 10% Pd/C (25 mg) in MeOH (8 mL) was stirred under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> for 5 h. The reaction was then purged with N<sub>2</sub>, filtered through a pad of CELITE™, and concentrated to give compound **32** (150 mg, 0.301 mmol, 86% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 498 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.65 (d,  $J=8.2$  Hz, 1H), 7.38 - 7.23 (m, 4H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.07 (d,  $J=7.9$  Hz, 1H), 6.90 - 6.64 (m, 3H), 5.41 (d,  $J=10.2$  Hz, 1H), 5.14 (d,  $J=15.3$  Hz, 1H), 4.76 (d,  $J=10.1$  Hz, 1H), 4.44 - 4.33 (m, 2H), 4.32 - 4.17 (m, 3H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.72 - 3.50 (m, 4H), 3.39 - 3.30 (m, 2H), 3.05 - 2.93 (m, 1H), 0.98 - 0.87 (m, 2H), 0.00 (s, 9H).

To a solution of compound **32** (65mg, 0.131 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) at 0 °C was added NEt<sub>3</sub> (0.055 mL, 0.39 mmol) and 2-chloroacetyl chloride **32a** (22.13 mg, 0.196 mmol). The solution was stirred for 1 h and then diluted with DCM. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was combined with compound **6** (59.4 mg, 0.131 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (4.2 mg, 0.392 mmol), and suspended in DMSO (1 mL). The resulting mixture was heated at 50 °C for 4 h. After cooling to RT, the reaction was diluted with EtOAc and washed with brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silical gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 24 g column) to give acetamide **33** (95 mg, 0.096 mmol, 73.3% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 992.5.

To a solution of acetamide **33** (40mg, 0.040 mmol) in THF (0.6 mL) at -78 °C was added a solution of LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH (0.4 mL, 1 M in THF). The reaction was then stirred at -78 °C for 1 h before it was quenched with water (1mL). The reaction mixture was then extracted with chloroform (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was then taken up in chloroform/EtOH (1:1, 2 mL). Silica gel (0.8 g) was added, followed by water (0.6 mL). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 1 day and then filtered, washing with 10% MeOH/chloroform. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column : Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 15-70% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-09**) (11 mg, 0.014 mmol, 35.1% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 700.2 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.57 (d, *J*=9.5 Hz, 2H), 7.48 (dd, *J*=5.3, 0.9 Hz, 2H), 7.40 - 7.31 (m, 9H), 6.83 (d, *J*=4.0 Hz, 2H), 5.01 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 2H), 4.64 - 4.51 (m, 4H), 4.20 (td, *J*=9.4, 5.0 Hz, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.91 - 3.82 (m, 4H), 3.34 - 3.23 (m, 2H), 3.20 - 3.11 (m, 2H).

#### Example 9 – THIQ-PBD dimers

The general scheme of **Fig. 5** can be used to prepare THIQ-PBD dimers, with one of the two THIQ monomer units replaced by a PBD monomer unit. The THIQ monomer unit can be alkylated first and then the PBD monomer unit attached, or *vice-versa*.

This example and **Figs. 7a** and **7b** illustrate the synthesis of THIQ-PBD dimers, with specific reference to dimers (**IIb-01**) and (**IIb-02**).



The preparation of dimer (**IIb-01**) is described first. The synthetic scheme is summarized in **Fig. 7a** and exemplifies the approach in which the THIQ is alkylated first.

A suspension of compound **6a** (Example 7 above, 50mg, 0.077 mmol), K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (31.9 mg, 0.231 mmol) and dione **35** (CAS Reg. No. 132391-70-9, Howard *et al.* 2014c, 40.3 mg, 0.154 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) was heated at 50 °C for 2 h. The reaction was cooled to RT and quenched with water. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (24 g column, 0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give compound **36**. LCMS (M+H) = 785.4.

Compound **36** was dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL). The solution was cooled to 0 °C before NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 3.07 mg, 0.077 mmol) and SEM-Cl (0.014 mL, 0.077 mmol) were added sequentially. The reaction was warmed to RT and stirred for 2 h. The reaction was then quenched with water, extracted with EtOAc, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Crude compound **37** was used in the next step without further purification (14mg, 0.015 mmol, 20% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 915.7.

To a solution of crude compound **37** (14mg, 0.015 mmol) in THF/EtOH (1:1, 1 mL) at 0 °C was added a solution of LiBH<sub>4</sub> (101 µl, 0.202 mmol, 2 M in THF). The reaction was slowly warmed to RT and stirred for 15 min before it was quenched with brine. The resulting mixture was extracted with CHCl<sub>3</sub> (3x). The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was then taken up in EtOH/chloroform (1:1, 2 mL). Silica gel (700 mg) was added, followed by water (0.6 mL). The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 1 day and then filtered, washing with 10% MeOH/CHCl<sub>3</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated and purified by reverse phase HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 CH<sub>3</sub>CN:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 15-60% B over 20 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give (**IIb-01**) (0.92mg, 1.330 µmol, 8.69% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 623. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.69 (d, *J*=4.4 Hz, 1H), 7.57 - 7.53 (m, 2H), 7.50 (d, *J*=5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.41 - 7.32 (m, 4H), 6.82 (d, *J*=1.5 Hz, 2H), 5.03 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 1H), 4.59 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 1H), 4.18 - 4.06 (m, 4H), 3.97 (s, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.75 (d, *J*=7.3 Hz, 4H), 3.61 (dt, *J*=11.8, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 3.34 - 3.26 (m, 1H), 3.22 - 3.15 (m, 1H), 2.34 (br. s., 2H), 2.11 - 2.06 (m, 1H), 2.01 - 1.94 (m, 4H), 1.71 - 1.66 (m, 2H).

Turning now to the synthesis of dimer (**IIb-02**), the synthetic scheme is summarized in **Fig. 7b**. In this instance, it is the PBD monomer unit that is alkylated first and then coupled to the THIQ monomer unit.

To a solution of compound **9** (220mg, 0.512 mmol) in MeOH (3 mL) and THF (3 mL) was added formaldehyde (37% aq. solution, 0.572 mL, 7.68 mmol) and a few drops of acetic acid. The solution was stirred at RT for 10 min before Na(CN)BH<sub>3</sub> (129 mg, 2.049 mmol) was added. The reaction was then stirred at RT for 2 h before it was concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silical gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 24 g column) to give compound **38a** (230 mg, 0.503 mmol, 98% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 458.

To a solution of compound **38a** (230mg, 0.503 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 0 °C was added NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 25.1 mg, 0.628 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 15 min before SEM-Cl (0.111 mL, 0.628 mmol) was added. The reaction was slowly warmed to RT and stirred overnight. The reaction was then quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give compound **38b**. LCMS (M+H) = 588.2.

Compound **38b** was combined with 10% Pd/C (20 mg) and suspended in EtOH/EtOAc (1:1, 10 mL). The mixture was purged with N<sub>2</sub> and then stirred under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> for 4 h. The reaction was then filtered through a pad of CELITE™ and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 40 g column) to give compound **38c** (190 mg, 0.382 mmol, 76% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 498.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 1H), 6.69 (m, 2H), 5.51 (d, J=9.9 Hz, 1H), 5.12 (d, J=15.2 Hz, 1H), 4.65 (d, J=10.1 Hz, 1H), 4.33 (d, J=15.2 Hz, 1H), 4.24 (d, J=0.4 Hz, 1H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.79 (s, 1H), 3.72 - 3.63 (m, 1H), 3.52 - 3.40 (m, 1H), 2.93 (s, 6H), 1.05 - 0.89 (m, 2H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

Compound **38d** was prepared by generally following the procedures described above. LCMS (M+H) = 393.4. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.38 (s, 1H), 7.27 (s, 1H), 6.34 (s, 1H), 5.46 (d, J=9.8 Hz, 1H), 4.70 (d, J=9.8 Hz, 1H), 4.19 - 4.06 (m, 1H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.80 - 3.60 (m, 3H), 3.60 - 3.53 (m, 1H), 3.50 (d, J=2.9 Hz, 2H), 2.78 - 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.19 - 1.95 (m, 3H), 1.05 - 0.96 (m, 2H), 0.08 - 0.02 (m, 9H).

To a solution of compound **38d** (1.2 g, 3.06 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.268 g, 9.17 mmol) and 1,5-diiodopentane (5.94 g, 18.34 mmol). The reaction was

stirred at RT for 2 h before it was quenched with water. The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (24 g column, 0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give compound **38e** (1.52 g, 2.58 mmol, 84%  
5 yield). LCMS (M+H) = 589.1

To a solution of compound **38e** (22.12 mg, 0.038 mmol) and compound **38c** (17mg, 0.034 mmol) in DMSO (1 mL) was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (9.44 mg, 0.068 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 14 h. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc and washed sequentially with water and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over  
10 Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 24 g column) to give compound **38f** (27 mg, 0.028 mmol, 82% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 958.3.

Compound **38f** was converted to dimer (**IIb-02**) by reduction generally following the procedures described above. LCMS (M+H) = 666.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz,  
15 CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.68 (d, *J*=4.4 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (d, *J*=1.8 Hz, 2H), 7.52 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.23 (d, *J*=8.8 Hz, 1H), 6.82 (d, *J*=1.8 Hz, 2H), 6.73 - 6.65 (m, 2H), 4.97 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.53 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.29 - 4.03 (m, 4H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.84 (ddd, *J*=11.7, 7.1, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 3.78 - 3.72 (m, 1H), 3.66 - 3.56 (m, 1H), 3.28 - 3.17 (m, 1H), 3.06 (dd, *J*=15.4, 4.2 Hz, 1H), 3.01 - 2.95 (m, 6H), 2.34 (td, *J*=6.7, 3.0 Hz, 2H), 2.16 - 1.90 (m,  
20 6H), 1.78 - 1.62 (m, 3H).

#### Example 10 – THIQ-THIQ dimers (IIa-10) and (IIa-11)

This example and **Fig. 8** relate to the preparation of dimers (**IIa-10**) and (**IIa-11**).

To a solution of compound **6a** (100 mg, 0.154 mmol) and compound **13** (68 mg, 0.123 mmol) in DMSO (3 mL) was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (50.9 mg, 0.368 mmol). The resulting  
25 suspension was stirred at RT for 5 h. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc, washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 12 g column) to give carbamate **39** (124 mg, 0.115 mmol, 94% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1076.3. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz,  
CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.30 (d, *J*=0.9 Hz, 6H), 7.27 - 7.18 (m, 5H), 6.89 (s, 1H), 6.01 - 5.88  
30 (m, 1H), 5.49 (dd, *J*=9.9, 4.0 Hz, 2H), 5.34 (dd, *J*=17.3, 1.4 Hz, 1H), 5.25 (dd, *J*=10.3, 1.1 Hz, 1H), 5.18 - 5.04 (m, 2H), 4.71 - 4.62 (m, 4H), 4.40 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 2H), 4.32 - 4.22 (m,

2H), 4.09 - 3.97 (m, 4H), 3.90 - 3.84 (m, 6H), 3.82 - 3.73 (m, 2H), 3.71 - 3.44 (m, 5H), 3.08 - 2.90 (m, 2H), 1.99 - 1.90 (m, 4H), 1.04 - 0.91 (m, 4H), 0.02 (s, 9H), 0.02 (s, 9H).

To a solution of carbamate **39** (124 mg, 0.115 mmol) in DCM (6 mL) at 0 °C was added morpholine (0.080 mL, 0.922 mmol). After the reaction was purged with N<sub>2</sub>,

5 Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub> (13.31 mg, 0.012 mmol) was added. The reaction was slowly warmed to RT and stirred under N<sub>2</sub> for 2 h. The reaction was then concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM) to give the corresponding aniline compound (90 mg, 0.091 mmol, 79% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 992.5.

To a solution of the preceding aniline compound (89mg, 0.090 mmol) in THF (3  
10 mL) at -78 °C was added LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH (1 M in THF, 0.448 mL, 0.448 mmol). The reaction was stirred at -78 °C for 1 h. The reaction then was quenched with water (1mL) and extracted with chloroform (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was then taken up in chloroform/EtOH (1:1, 2 mL). Silica gel (0.7 g) was added, followed by water (0.6 mL). The resulting suspension was  
15 stirred at RT for 1 day and then filtered, washing with 10% MeOH/chloroform. The filtrate was concentrated and purified on HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 20-70% B over 20 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-10**) (19mg, 0.024 mmol, 27.2% yield). LCMS  
20 (M+H) = 700.2 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.54 (d, *J*=2.4 Hz, 2H), 7.50 (t, *J*=4.7 Hz, 2H), 7.41 - 7.31 (m, 5H), 7.15 (d, *J*=8.6 Hz, 1H), 6.81 (d, *J*=1.8 Hz, 2H), 6.73 - 6.59 (m, 2H), 5.02 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 1H), 4.92 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.58 (d, *J*=15.6 Hz, 1H), 4.47 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.22 - 4.03 (m, 3H), 4.00 - 3.70 (m, 9H), 3.34 - 3.25 (m, 1H), 3.18 (dt, *J*=15.4, 4.2 Hz, 2H), 3.09 - 3.00 (m, 1H), 2.03 - 1.92 (m, 4H), 1.76 - 1.63 (m, 2H).

25 To a solution of dimer (**IIa-10**) (4.5mg, 6.43 μmol), Fmoc-GLY-OH (Chem-Impex, 3.82 mg, 0.013 mmol), and *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyl-*O*-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)uronium hexafluorophosphate (HATU, 4.89 mg, 0.013 mmol) in DMF (0.5 mL) was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (DIEA, 3.37 μL, 0.019 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 4 h before piperidine (100 uL) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 1 h. The  
30 crude reaction mixture was then diluted with DMF, filtered, and purified on reverse phase HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA;

Gradient: 20-70% B over 20 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer (**IIa-11**) (0.94mg, 1.180  $\mu$ mol, 18.35% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 757.2.

*Example 11 – THIQ-PBD dimer (IIb-03)*

This example and **Fig. 9** relate to the preparation of the THIQ-PBD dimer (**IIb-**  
5 **03**).

Compound **41** was prepared generally following the procedures in the previous examples. LCMS (M+H) = 409.1 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.32 (s, 1H), 7.25 (s, 1H), 6.30 (s, 1H), 5.45 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.71 (d,  $J=9.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.65 (br. s., 1H), 4.30 (dd,  $J=7.9, 5.9$  Hz, 1H), 4.00 - 3.84 (m, 4H), 3.79 - 3.57 (m, 3H), 2.97 (dt,  $J=13.5, 5.5$   
10 Hz, 1H), 2.86 (br. s., 1H), 2.21 - 2.08 (m, 1H), 1.00 (t,  $J=8.4$  Hz, 2H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

To a solution of dione **41** (500mg, 1.224 mmol) in DMSO (3 mL) was added 1,3-dibromopropane **42** (1730 mg, 8.57 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (423 mg, 3.06 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 3 h. The reaction was then quenched with water and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and  
15 concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 40 g column) to give bromopropoxy PBD **43** (540 mg, 0.918 mmol, 75%) as a white foam. LCMS (M+H) = 531.2.

To a solution of THIQ monomer **19** (100 mg, 0.180 mmol), prepared generally following the procedures of the preceding examples, and bromopropoxy PBD **43** (117 mg,  
20 0.198 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) was added K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (62.3 mg, 0.451 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 16 h. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc and washed sequentially with water and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. The resulting mixture was taken up in MeOH (10 mL), and PPTS (20 mg) was added. The reaction was stirred at 40 °C for 1 h. The reaction was then concentrated, taken up in EtOAc,  
25 washed with aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and then brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-20% EtOAc/Hexane, 24 g column) to give compound **45** (150 mg, 0.163 mmol, 91% yield). LCMS: (M+H) = 919.3

To a solution of compound **45** (150mg, 0.163 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) was added  
30 K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (67.7 mg, 0.490 mmol) and iodomethane (46.3 mg, 0.326 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 16 h. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc and washed with water. The

organic layer was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product **46** was used in the next step without further purification. LCMS (M+H) = 933.5.

To a 0 °C solution of crude **46** (150 mg, 0.161 mmol) in DCM (804 µL) and DMSO (804 µL) was added triethylamine (112 µL, 0.804 mmol) followed by sulfur trioxide pyridine complex (51.2 mg, 0.321 mmol). The reaction was allowed to warm to RT and stirred for 16 h. The reaction was then diluted with DCM (30 mL), washed sequentially with sat. aq. NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (10 mL), H<sub>2</sub>O (2 × 10 mL), and sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by ISCO silica gel flash chromatography (24 g column; gradient 0-100% EtOAc-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to provide ketone **47** (112 mg, 0.084 mmol, 52.4% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 930.5.

To a solution of ketone **47** (112 mg, 0.120 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added 2,6-lutidine (0.028 mL, 0.241 mmol). The solution was then cooled to -78 °C. Triflic anhydride (0.030 mL, 0.180 mmol) was then added dropwise. The reaction was slowly warmed to 0 °C and stirred for 2 h. The reaction was then quenched with brine and extracted with DCM. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-10% MeOH/DCM, 24 g column) to give triflate **48** (81 mg, 0.076 mmol, 63.3% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1062.

To a vial with screw-cap top was added triflate **48** (81 mg, 0.076 mmol), 4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)aniline **48a** (20.03 mg, 0.091 mmol) and [1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]dichloropalladium(II) (2.79 mg, 3.81 µmol). The vial was evacuated and backfilled with N<sub>2</sub>. THF (2 mL) and a solution of aq. K<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> (1 M, 0.38 µL, 0.38 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred under N<sub>2</sub> at 45 °C for 2 h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc and washed with brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified using ISCO silica gel flash chromatography (12 g column; linear gradient 0-100% EtOAc-Hex) to provide the compound **49** (53 mg, 0.053 mmol, 69.1% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1006.3. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.41 (s, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.29 - 7.20 (m, 6H), 6.91 - 6.80 (m, 2H), 6.68 (d, *J*=8.6 Hz, 2H), 5.51 (dd, *J*=11.9, 10.0 Hz, 2H), 5.13 (d, *J*=15.4 Hz, 1H), 4.75 (dd, *J*=16.8, 10.0 Hz, 2H), 4.60 (dd, *J*=10.6, 3.4 Hz, 1H), 4.39 (d, *J*=15.3 Hz, 1H), 4.33 - 4.21 (m, 5H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.82 (s, 3H), 3.80 - 3.74 (m, 3H), 3.69 (tdd, *J*=9.5, 7.2, 5.0 Hz, 2H), 3.51 (dd, *J*=15.5, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 3.12 (ddd, *J*=16.1, 10.6, 2.1 Hz, 1H), 3.03 - 2.87 (m, 1H), 2.44 (t, *J*=5.9 Hz, 2H), 1.03 - 0.92 (m, 4H), 0.04 (s, 9H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

To a solution of compound **49** (7mg, 6.96  $\mu$ mol) in THF (1 mL) at -78 °C was added dropwise a solution of lithium triethylborohydride (0.070 mL, 0.070 mmol, 1M in THF). The reaction was stirred at -78 °C for 1 h before it was quenched with brine. The mixture was extracted with 10% MeOH/chloroform (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in THF/EtOH (1:1, 2 mL). Aqueous formic acid (0.05%, 1 mL) was added. The reaction was then stirred at RT for 2 h. The mixture was neutralized with aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and extracted with chloroform (3x). The combined organic layers were concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel flash chromatography (0-6% MeOH/DCM, 4 g column) to give dimer (**IIb-03**) (2.1 mg, 2.65  $\mu$ mol, 38.1% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 714.0.

*Example 12 – Dimers (IIa-16) and (IIa-18)*

This example and **Figs. 10** and **11** relate to the synthesis of dimers having an amine group in the bridge connecting the two halves of the dimer, such amine group being a suitable functional group for attachment of a linker. (See type (a) dimer-linker compounds, discussed hereinabove.)

The scheme for the synthesis of dimer (**IIa-16**) ((6aS,6a'S)-3,3'-((azanediylbis(ethane-2,1-diyl))bis(oxy))bis(2-methoxy-6a,7-dihydrobenzo[5,6][1,4]diazepino[1,2-b]isoquinolin-14(12H)-one)) is shown in **Fig. 10**.

To a suspension of 2,2'-azanediyl diethanol **50** (5 g, 47.6 mmol, Fluka) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (6.57 g, 47.6 mmol) in acetonitrile (50 mL) at 0 °C was added allyl chloroformate **12a** (5.07 mL, 47.6 mmol) and stirred at RT for 3 h. LCMS showed formation of product. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C, quenched with water (200 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL), water (100 mL), and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to afford carbamate **51** (2.55 g, 13.48 mmol, 28.3% yield) as light yellow oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  5.94 (m, 1H), 5.32 (dd, *J* = 17.6, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (dd, *J* = 10.4, 1.2 Hz, 1H), 4.62 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 3.84 (d, *J* = 12.4 Hz, 2H), 3.52 (s, 2H), 2.86 (s, 2H). LCMS: [M+1] = 190.1.

To a solution of carbamate **51** (600 mg, 3.17 mmol) and NEt<sub>3</sub> (1.768 mL, 12.68 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) at 0 °C was added TsCl (1814 mg, 9.51 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) and stirred at RT for 1 h. LCMS showed product formation. The reaction solution was concentrated and the crude product was purified on COMBIFLASH™ using 80 g silica column and

0-70% EtOAc/hexane over 25 min. 70% fraction provided compound **52** as a thick oil (54% yield). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.78 (m, 4H), 7.38 (m, 4H), 5.82 (m, 1H), 5.22 (m, 2H), 4.48 (m, 2H), 4.13 (m, 4H), 3.52 (m, 4H), 2.47 (s, 6H). LCMS: [M+Na] = 520.1.

A solution of compound **52** (39.8 mg, 0.080 mmol) and compound **6** (80 mg, 0.176 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (33.2 mg, 0.240 mmol) in DMSO (1.5 mL) was stirred at 50 °C for 19 h. LCMS showed a major peak corresponding to product. The reaction mixture was poured into water containing AcOH (0.027 mL, 0.480 mmol, 30 mL). Saturated brine (10 mL) was added and extracted with EtOAc (3x15 mL). The combined organic layers were concentrated and purified on ISCO COMBIFLASH™ 24 g column using 0-100% EtOAc/hexane over 30 min. 70% EtOAc/hexane fraction provided compound **53** (64% yield). LCMS (m+1) = 1062.5.

To a solution of compound **53** (54 mg, 0.051 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added morpholine (0.022 mL, 0.254 mmol) and Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub> (2.94 mg, 2.54 μmol) and stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at RT for 2 h. LCMS showed reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated and purified on ISCO COMBIFLASH™ 24 g column using 0-8% MeOH/DCM to afford compound **54** as white solid (64% yield). LCMS: (m+1) = 978.5.

To a solution of compound **54** (35 mg, 0.036 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH (0.179 mL, 0.179 mmol) at -76 °C. The solution was stirred for 1 h. LCMS showed that the reaction was complete. The reaction was quenched with cold water (20 mL) and the reaction mixture was extracted with CHCl<sub>3</sub> (3x10 mL). The resulting residue was treated with DCM/EtOH/water (1:2:1 = 4 mL) and silica gel (1g) for 4 days.. This mixture was filtered through a sintered glass funnel and the silica gel was washed with CHCl<sub>3</sub>-MeOH (8:2, 100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under high vacuum and purified on a 24 g silica gel column using MeOH/DCM. 20% MeOH/DCM fraction provided dimer (**IIa-16**) in 65% yield. LCMS: (m+1) = 686.3.

Dimer (**IIa-18**) was analogously prepared, starting from 2-amino-propanol-1,3-diol **55** and proceeding through compounds **56**, **57**, **58**, and **59**.

Compound **56**: light yellow oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 5.94 (m, 1H), 5.50 (brs, 1H), 5.29 (m, 2H), 4.60 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 3.83 (m, 5H).  
LCMS (m+1) = 176.



Compound **57**: white solid,  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.78 (m, 4H), 7.38 (m, 4H), 5.88 (m, 1H), 5.25 (m, 2H), 5.02 (brs, 1H), 4.53 (d,  $J = 5.6$  Hz, 2H), 4.09 (m, 5H), 2.48 (s, 6H).

Compound **58**: MS ( $m+1$ ) = 1048.

5 Compound **59**: LCMS ( $m+1$ ) = 964.46.

Dimer (**IIa-18**): LCMS ( $m+1$ ) = 672.3.

*Example 13 – Type (a) dimer-linker (IIIa-01)*

This example and **Fig. 12** describe the preparation of type (a) dimer-linker (**IIIa-01**).

10 To a 100 mL round-bottom flask was added Fmoc-Val-Cit **60** (Firestone *et al.*, US 6,214,345 B1 (2001), Example 56, 363 mg, 0.731 mmol), HATU (278mg, 0.731 mmol), and DMF (20 mL). The resulting solution was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min before 2,6-lutidine (0.113 mL, 0.97 mmol) was added. The mixture was added to compound **24f** (500 mg, 0.487 mmol). The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to RT and stirred for 5 h. The reaction  
15 was then quenched with 10% LiCl solution and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were washed with 10% LiCl and then brine, before drying over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrating *in vacuo*. The crude product mixture was purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, gradient from 0% to 10% MeOH / DCM in 15 minutes) to give compound **61a** (520 mg, 71% yield). LCMS ( $M+1$ ) = 1504.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz,  
20  $\text{CHLOROFORM-d}$ )  $\delta$  7.83 - 7.69 (m, 4H), 7.58 (br. s., 2H), 7.45 - 7.17 (m, 16H), 7.15 - 6.93 (m, 1H), 5.45 (d,  $J=10.1$  Hz, 2H), 5.24 - 4.97 (m, 7H), 4.71 (d,  $J=9.7$  Hz, 5H), 4.56 - 4.02 (m, 8H), 3.87 (s, 6H), 3.79 - 3.49 (m, 8H), 3.03 (d,  $J=6.4$  Hz, 3H), 1.77 (s, 7H), 1.09 - 0.82 (m, 11H), 0.10 - 0.10 (m, 18H).

To a solution of compound **61a** (580 mg, 0.385 mmol) in DMF (7.7 mL) was  
25 added piperidine (191  $\mu\text{L}$ , 1.927 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 1 h. The crude product mixture was then concentrated and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (40 g column, gradient from 0% to 10% MeOH / DCM in 15 minutes) to give compound **61b** (318 mg, 64% yield). LCMS ( $M+1$ ) = 1282.

To a -78 °C solution of compound **61b** (200 mg, 0.156 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was  
30 added a solution of  $\text{LiEt}_3\text{BH}$  (0.780 mL, 0.780 mmol) (1M in THF). The reaction was stirred at -78 °C for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with water and extracted with chloroform (2x), then chloroform/MeOH (2x). The combined organic extracts were dried and concentrated.

The residue was then taken up in chloroform/EtOH/water (1:1:1, 4 mL) and silica gel (0.7 g) was added. The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for 3 days before it was filtered through a CELITE™ plug, washed with chloroform, and concentrated. The material was taken up in DMF, and purified by reverse phase HPLC to give compound **62** (57 mg, 36.9% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 990 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d) δ 7.62 - 7.50 (m, 2H), 7.50 - 7.25 (m, 12H), 6.88 - 6.68 (m, 1H), 5.33 - 4.67 (m, 6H), 4.66 - 4.29 (m, 3H), 4.02 - 3.69 (m, 6H), 3.47 - 2.84 (m, 6H), 2.46 - 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.59 (br. s., 4H), 1.09 - 0.74 (m, 6H).

To a solution of compound **62** (23 mg, 0.023 mmol) and compound **62a** (available as MAL-dPEG8-NHS® ester from QuantaBio; 32 mg, 0.046 mmol) in DMSO (1.4 mL) was added 2,6-lutidine (5.41 µL, 0.046 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 2 h. The crude product mixture was filtered and purified by reverse phase HPLC (Column : Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid; Gradient: 20-70% B over 17 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm). The fractions containing product were passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP 500 mg cartridge (Agilent). The filtrate was collected by gravity, and the column washed with 4 mL of ACN. The combined filtrates were concentrated and lyophilized to give dimer-linker (**IIIa-01**) (3 mg, 35.8% yield). LCMS (M+1) = 1564.

*Example 14 – Type (a) dimer-linker (IIIa-02)*

This example and **Fig. 13** describe the preparation of type (a) dimer-linker (**IIIa-02**).

To a solution of carbonate **63** (3.92 mg, 3.50 µmol, preparation described hereinbelow) and dimer (**IIa-16**) (2 mg, 2.92 µmol) in DMSO (0.2 mL) was added DIEA (1.528 µL, 8.75 µmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at RT overnight. Purification by R-HPLC using acetonitrile/water (0.05% formic acid) over 30 min yielded product-containing fractions, which were filtered through a basic resin (PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP -Resin 1.8 mmol/g; Agilent Part # PL3540-C603) and washed with acetonitrile (5 mL). Lyophilization gave dimer-linker (**IIIa-02**) as white solid in 52% yield. LCMS (m+1) = 1666.

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the procedures for making type (a) dimer linker compounds in this and the preceding example can be adapted for making other type (a) dimer linker compounds, *mutatis mutandis*.

*Example 15 – Type (b) dimer-linker compounds*

This example and **Figs. 14-16** relate to the preparation of compounds **73** and **74**, used in the synthesis of type (b) dimer-linker compounds, and the preparation of such dimer-linker compounds from them.

5           A flask was charged with 5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)benzoic acid **64** (CAS Reg. No. 1430738-03-6, 9.0 g, 24.36 mmol) and HATU (10.19 g, 26.8 mmol) in DCM (100 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 min and treated with DIEA (4.68 mL, 26.8 mmol) and isoquinoline **65** (CAS Reg. No. 215928-81-7, 7.43 g, 26.8 mmol). The reaction was maintained at 0 °C for 3 h and then stirred at RT for 24 h. The  
10   reaction mixture was poured into saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and DCM. The organic phase was collected and concentrated to a residue. The residue was further purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10%-30% EtOAc in hexanes. The product was collected and concentrated to afford amide **66** as a light tan oil (10.15g, 66% yield). LCMS M+H=629.65.

          A solution of amide **66** (10.1 g, 16.06 mmol) in MeOH (200 mL) was cooled to 0  
15   °C and NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (4.29 g, 80 mmol) and zinc dust (5.25 g, 80 mmol) were added. The resulting green suspension was stirred at 0 °C for 45 min, then allowed to warm to RT overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through a CELITE™ pad (washing with MeOH) and the filtrate was concentrated to a residue. The residue was taken up in DCM and loaded onto silica gel pad. This was flushed with 50% EtOAc and hexanes to afford aniline **67** (8.02g, 83% yield).  
20   LCMS M+H=599.35.

          Aniline **67** (2500 mg, 4.17 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (50 mL) and pyridine (0.878 mL, 10.85 mmol) was added. The mixture was cooled to -78 °C and allyl chloroformate **12a** (0.579 mL, 5.43 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was maintained at this temperature for 1 h and then allowed to warm to RT. The reaction mixture was  
25   poured into saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and DCM. The mixture was extracted with DCM and purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10%-50% EtOAc in hexanes to afford carbamate **68** (2.5g, 88% yield). LCMS M+H=683.40.

          Carbamate **68** (1.372g, 2.009 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (20 mL). 10% concentrated HCl in MeOH (2 mL, 6.58 mmol) was added. The mixture was aged for 20 min  
30   and quenched with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (0.591 g, 7.03 mmol) in water. The mixture was diluted with water and extracted 4x with DCM. The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>,

filtered, and evaporated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10-50% EtOAc/Hexanes afforded alcohol **69** (963mg, 84% yield). ). LCMS M+H=569.25.

Oxalyl chloride (2.0M, 1.450 mL, 2.90 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (30 mL) and then the mixture was cooled to -78 °C in a dry ice/acetone bath. To this was added  
5 DMSO (0.515 mL, 7.25 mmol, dissolved in ~2mL DCM to prevent freezing during addition) and the temperature was maintained at -78 °C. After 20 mins, alcohol **69** (1.65 g, 2.90 mmol) dissolved in DCM (10 mL) was added to the reaction. This was allowed to stir for an additional 30 min and followed by addition of NEt<sub>3</sub> (2.022 mL, 14.50 mmol). After 10 min the reaction was allowed to warm up to RT. This was quenched with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and  
10 extracted with DCM (2x). The organic phases were combined, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated to residue. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 30%-100% EtOAc in hexanes. The product was collected and concentrated to afford aminal **70** as a white solid (1.51g, 92% yield). ). LCMS M+H = 567.30. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, chloroform-d) δ 7.39 - 7.24 (m, 5H), 7.22 (s, 1H), 6.67 (s, 1H),  
15 5.75 (dd, *J*=11.2, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 5.31 (dd, *J*=9.5, 4.0 Hz, 1H), 5.22 - 5.07 (m, 2H), 4.84 (d, *J*=15.8 Hz, 1H), 4.64 - 4.49 (m, 2H), 4.44 (d, *J*=5.3 Hz, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.77 - 3.61 (m, 1H), 3.28 - 3.01 (m, 3H), 1.34 - 1.18 (m, 3H), 1.09 (dd, *J*=7.4, 2.6 Hz, 18H).

Aminal **70** (776 mg, 1.369 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (12 mL) and 2,6-lutidine (0.638 mL, 5.48 mmol) was added. The mixture was cooled on an ice bath and tert-butyltrimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (TBSOTf, 0.943 mL, 4.11 mmol) was added.  
20 The mixture was aged for 30 min, diluted with DCM, quenched with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, and extracted 2x with DCM. The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10-30% EtOAc/ hexanes to afford silyl ether **71** (907.6 mg, 1.333  
25 mmol, 97% yield) <sup>1</sup>H-NMR showed the purified material was contaminated with ~0.25 equivalents 2,6-lutidine (~4 wt%), but was taken on without any further purification. LCMS M+H = 681.25.

Silyl ether **71** (907 mg, 1.332 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL and water (0.1 ml). Lithium acetate (88 mg, 1.332 mmol) was added and the mixture was aged overnight.  
30 Most of the DMF was evaporated under a stream of nitrogen. The residue was diluted with EtOAc, washed 2x with 0.1M citric acid then once with brine. The organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 30-70% EtOAc/hexanes to afford phenol **72** (707.4

mg, 1.107 mmol, 83% yield) containing some EtOAc by <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (approx. 1.3 equiv.; yield adjusted to account for EtOAc). LCMS M+H = 525.10.

Phenol **72** (290 mg, 0.553 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (2800 µl) and cesium carbonate (180 mg, 0.553 mmol) and 1,5-diiodopentane (400 µL, 2.69 mmol) were added.

5 The vial was sealed and heated to 60 °C overnight. After the reaction was allowed to proceed overnight, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and water. The mixture was extracted twice, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated to afford a crude residue that was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10-50% EtOAc/hexanes to afford compound **73** (381 mg, 96% yield). LCMS M+H = 721.10.

10 Compound **74** was similarly prepared from phenol **72** using 1,3-diiodopropane.

Turning now to the scheme of **Fig. 15**: Compound **67** (2.1g, 3.51 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (30 mL) and pyridine (0.3 mL, 3.71 mmol) was added. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C. 4-Nitrophenyl carbonochloridate **67a** (0.707 g, 3.51 mmol) was added and the mixture aged for 7 min at the same temperature. A solution of compound **75** (CAS Reg.  
15 No. 1343407-91-9, 1.323 g, 3.51 mmol) and DIEA (0.750 mL, 4.29 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was added. The mixture was placed on a rotary evaporator at RT to remove the DCM. After 20 min, the DMF was evaporated under a stream of nitrogen and then the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 10-100% EtOAc in hexanes to afford compound **76** (1.579 g, 1.575 mmol, 44.9% yield). LCMS M+H=1002.50.

20 A solution of compound **76** (1.579g, 1.575 mmol) in MeOH (14.4 ml) was treated with 10% concentrated HCl in MeOH (1.6 ml, 5.27 mmol). The mixture was aged 30 min, quenched with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and extracted with chloroform (3x). The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to leave a residue. The residue was combined with another batch of the same reaction (starting with 0.816g of  
25 compound **76**) for purification. The combined crude residues were purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 20-100% EtOAc/Hexanes to afford carbamate **77** (1.7412 g, 1.961 mmol, 82% yield). LCMS M+H=888.30.

A solution of oxalyl chloride (2.0M, 1.00 mL, 2.000 mmol) in 10 mL DCM was cooled to -78 °C. A solution of DMSO (0.348 mL, 4.90 mmol) in 5mL DCM was added  
30 dropwise and the mixture aged at the same temperature for 10 min. A solution of carbamate **77** (1741.2 mg, 1.961 mmol) in 5mL DCM was added dropwise and the mixture was again aged for 15 min. NEt<sub>3</sub> (1.366 mL, 9.80 mmol) was added dropwise; the mixture was aged at the same temperature for 5 min and then the cold bath was removed and the mixture was

allowed to warm to RT. The mixture was quenched with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution and extracted twice with DCM. The combined organic phases were washed with water and brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 50-80% EtOAc/Hexanes to afford compound **78** (1376.7 mg, 1.554 mmol, 79% yield). LCMS M+H=886.30.

Compound **78** (1045 mg, 1.179 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (10 ml) and 2,6-lutidine (0.549 ml, 4.72 mmol) was added. The mixture was cooled on an ice bath and TBSOTf (0.813 ml, 3.54 mmol) was added. After 1 h, the mixture was diluted with DCM, washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting 20-100% EtOAc/Hexanes. Some mixed fractions were obtained, which were repurified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 50% EtOAc/Hexanes (isocratic). The pure fractions were combined to afford compound **79** (676.9 mg, 0.677 mmol, 57.4% yield). LCMS M+H=1000.30.

A solution of compound **79** (676 mg, 0.676 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) and water (0.1 mL) was treated with lithium acetate (44.6 mg, 0.676 mmol). The mixture was aged overnight, and the solvent was evaporated under a stream of nitrogen. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 0.1M citric acid. The phases were separated and the organic phases were washed twice with 0.1M citric acid, once with brine and then dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 50-100% EtOAc/Hexanes to afford compound **80** (543.6 mg, 0.644 mmol, 95% yield). LCMS M+H=844.35.

Turning now to **Fig. 16**, it shows a scheme by which the previously made intermediate compounds **73** and **80** were used to make dimer-linker (**IIIb-01**).

A solution of compound **73** (326 mg, 0.452 mmol) and compound **80** (318 mg, 0.377 mmol) in acetone (1884  $\mu$ l) was treated with cesium carbonate (123 mg, 0.377 mmol). The vial containing the mixture was sealed and warmed at 60 °C. After allowing the reaction to proceed overnight, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed with 0.1M citric acid and brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated to residue. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 50-80% EtOAc/hexanes. This afforded compound **81** (338 mg, 0.235 mmol, 62.4% yield) contaminated with a closely-eluting impurity. The mixture was taken on to the next step without further purification (yield

is uncorrected for purity). LCMS M+H = 1436.65. HRMS found M+H = 1436.6881, calculated = 1436.6916. HRMS for closely-eluting impurity M+H = 1378.6485.

To a solution of compound **81** (107 mg, 0.074 mmol, impure from the previous step) in THF (2 mL) was added tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride (TBAF, 1.0M, 0.16 mL, 0.160 mmol). The mixture was aged for 10 min, diluted with EtOAc, washed sequentially with water, saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine and then dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 1-10% MeOH/DCM to afford compound **82** (71 mg, 0.059 mmol, 79% yield), contaminated with a closely eluting impurity (yield uncorrected for purity). LCMS M+Na = 1230.25. HRMS found M+H = 1208.5170, calculated = 1208.5187. HRMS for closely-eluting impurity M+H = 1150.4755.

A vial was charged with compound **82** (71 mg, 0.059 mmol, impure from previous step) and a 0.042 M solution of pyrrolidine in DCM (3.50 mL, 0.147 mmol) was added, followed by palladium tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphine (4.07 mg, 3.53 μmol). The mixture was aged for 1 h, diluted with DCM, and washed with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. The aqueous portion was re-extracted with DCM, the organic phases were combined, washed with brine, the brine layer was again re-extracted with DCM and the combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF and purified by preparative HPLC over three injections (Sunfire C18 prep OBD column 19x100mm, Solvent A = 95% water, 5% ACN + 0.1% TFA, solvent B = 55% water, 95% ACN + 0.1% TFA; gradient is 0-100%B over 10min, with a hold to 12min, fractions collected by UV at 254nm). The purified fractions were passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub>- MP SPE 500mg/6mL cartridge to afford the product as a free base. The solution of the free base was evaporated to give compound **83** (30 mg, 0.029 mmol, 49.9% yield). LCMS M+H=1022.25.

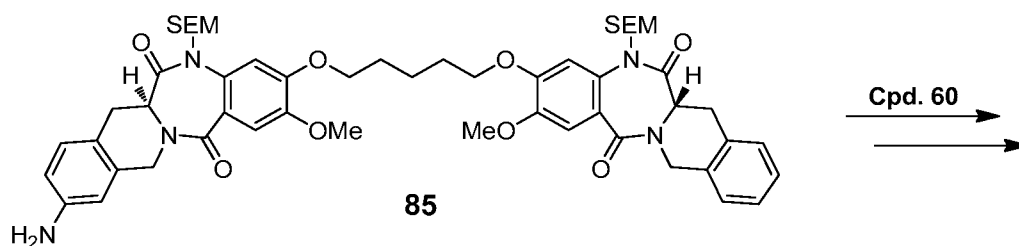
A vial was charged with compound **83** (18.10 mg, 0.059 mmol) followed by 0.05M DIEA in DMF (0.8 ml, 0.040 mmol). This mixture was allowed to age overnight, and then was diluted with DMF (~0.4mL) and purified by preparative HPLC (1 injection) (Sunfire C18 prep OBD column 19x100mm, Solvent A = 95% water, 5% ACN + 0.1% TFA, solvent B = 55% water, 95% ACN + 0.1% TFA; gradient is 0-100%B over 10 min, with a hold to 12min, fractions collected by UV at 254nm). The purified fractions were passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub>- MP SPE 500mg/6mL cartridge to afford dime-linker (**IIIb-01**) (19.6 mg, 0.015 mmol, 52.2% yield) as a free base. LCMS M+H=1216. HRMS found M+H=1215.5387, calculated = 1215.5397.

Analogously following the procedures described above, additional dimer-linker compounds were prepared:

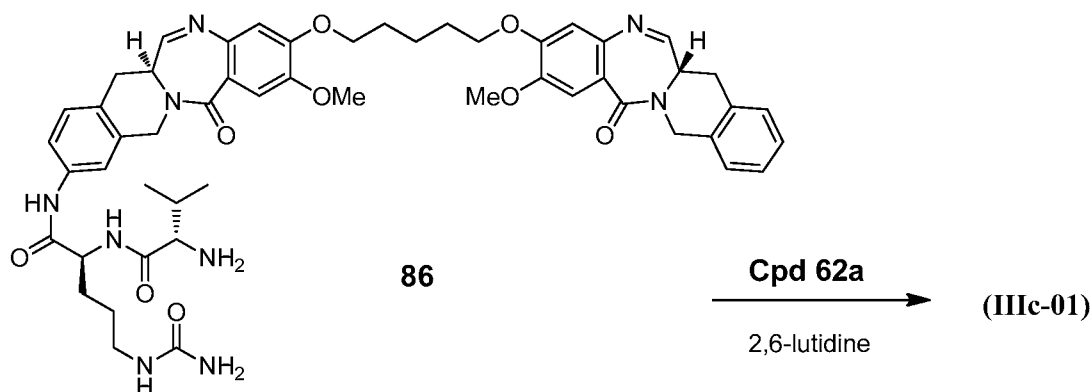
- (a) Compounds **74** and **80** were used to prepare dimer-linker (**IIIb-03**): LCMS  $M+H=1187.20$ . HRMS found  $M+H=1187.5087$ , calculated = 1187.5084.
- 5 (b) Dimer-linkers (**IIIb-01**) and (**IIIb-03**) were reduced with sodium cyanoborohydride to yield dimer-linkers (**IIIb-05**) (LCMS  $(M+2H)/2=609.55$ . HRMS found  $M+H=1217.5561$ , calculated = 1217.5554) and (**IIIb-06**) (LCMS  $M+H=1189$ . HRMS found  $M+H=1189.5268$ , calculated = 1189.5241), respectively.
- (c) Compound **83** was converted to dimer-linker (**IIIb-02**) by coupling with compound  
10 **62a**: LCMS  $(M+2H)/2=799.25$ . HRMS found  $M+H=1596.7390$ , calculated = 1596.7396.
- (d) Compound **81** was converted to dimer-linker (**IIIb-04**) by reduction with palladium tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) and coupling with compound **84**: LCMS  $M+H=1329$ . HRMS found  $M+H=1329.6247$ , calculated = 1329.6262.
- 15 Those skilled in the art will appreciate that type (b) THIQ-PBD dimer-linker compounds can be made using a PBD equivalent of compound **73** or **74** or compound **80** and otherwise analogously following the procedures described hereinabove.

*Example 16 – Type (c) dimer-linkers*

- Compound **85**, prepared by removal of the Alloc group from compound **39**  
20 (Example 10) was coupled with compound **60** and converted to compound **86** by analogously following the procedures described hereinabove.

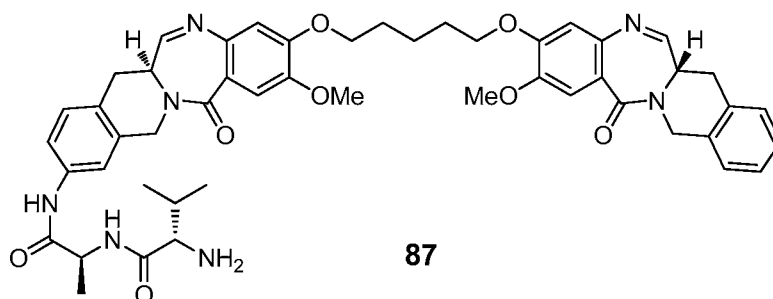






To a solution of compound **86** (9.6 mg, 10.04  $\mu$ mol) and 2,6-dimethylpyridine (2.152 mg, 0.020 mmol) in DMSO (0.7 mL) was added a solution of MAL-dPEG®8-NHS ester (13.85 mg, 0.020 mmol) in DMSO (100  $\mu$ L). The reaction was stirred at RT for 1 h. The solution was then diluted with acetonitrile, filtered, and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column: Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 0-70% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm). The fractions containing product were passed through a PL-HCO3 MP 500 mg cartridge (Agilent). The filtrate was collected by gravity, and the column washed with 4 mL of ACN. The combined filtrates were concentrated and lyophilized to give the dimer-linker (**IIIc-01**) (9.4 mg, 5.53  $\mu$ mol, 55.0% yield). LCMS ( $M+H$ ) = 1530.

Compound **87** (LCMS ( $M+2H$ ) = 435.9) was prepared from compound **85** by analogously following the procedures described hereinabove, *mutatis mutandis*.



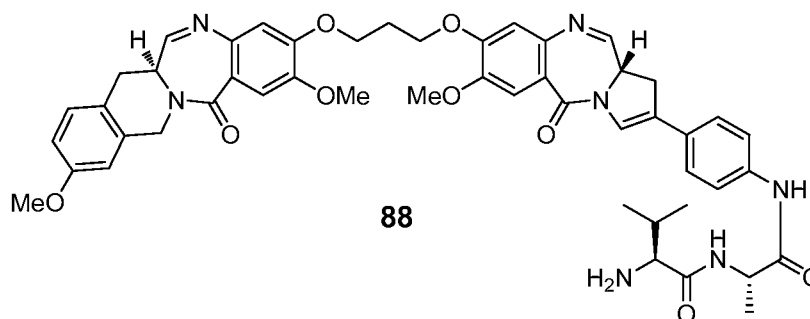
15

To a solution of compound **87** (5 mg, 5.75  $\mu$ mol) and 2,5-dioxopyrrolidin-1-yl 6-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)hexanoate (1.949 mg, 6.32  $\mu$ mol) in DMSO (0.2 mL) was added 2,6-lutidine (1.339  $\mu$ L, 0.011 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 4 h. The reaction was then diluted with DMF (1 mL), filtered, and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column: Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA;

20

Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 20-80% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm). The fractions containing product were passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP 500 mg cartridge (Agilent). The filtrate was collected by gravity, and the column washed with 4 mL of acetonitrile. The combined filtrates were concentrated and lyophilized to give dimer linker (**IIIc-07**) (1.8 mg, 1.524  $\mu$ mol, 26.5% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1063.4.

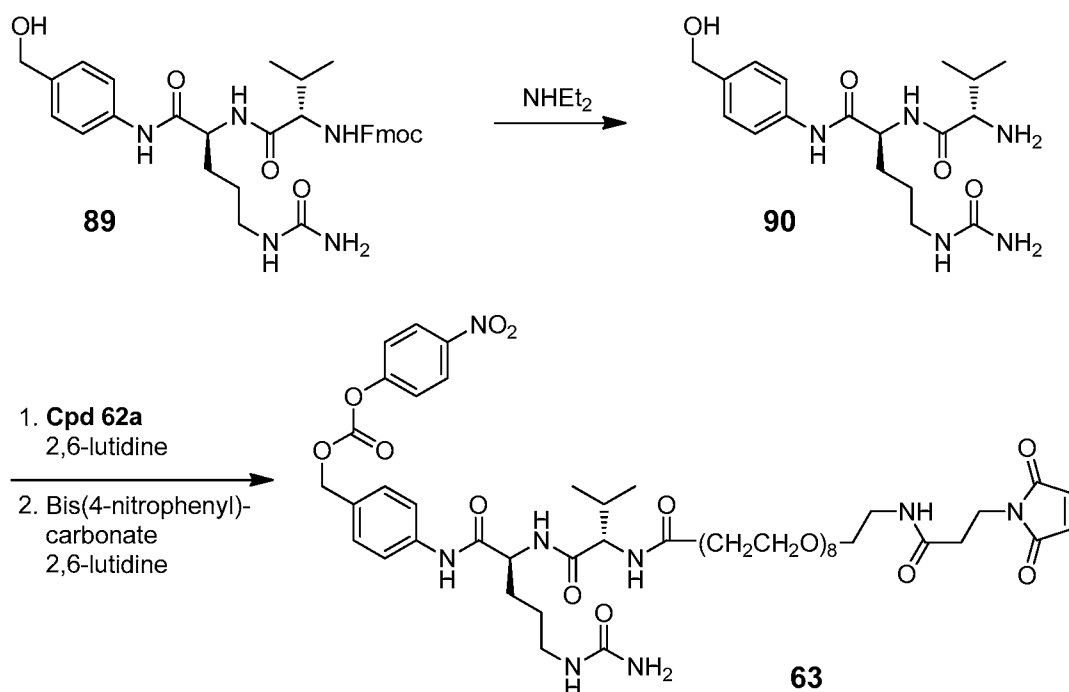
Compound **88** was prepared from compound **49** by analogously following the procedures hereinabove. LCMS (M+H) = 884.7



To a solution of compound **84** (12.03 mg, 0.039 mmol) and compound **88** (23 mg, 0.026 mmol) in DMSO (0.2 mL) was added 2,6-lutidine (6.06  $\mu$ L, 0.052 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 5 h and then diluted with DCM and purified using ISCO silica gel chromatography (0-15% MeOH/DCM, 12 g column). Fractions containing the desired product was then concentrated to give a slightly yellow foam, which was taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O/THF (2:1, 4 mL) and lyophilized to give dimer-linker (**IIIc-08**) (9.5 mg, 7.94  $\mu$ mol, 30.5% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1077.8.

*Example 17 – Type (c) dimer-linkers with self-immolating group in the linker*

This example illustrates the preparation of dimer-linker compounds where the linker has a PABC self-immolating group, such as dimer-linker (**IIIc-02**). The linker moiety is assembled as shown below:



To a solution of compound **89** (Firestone *et al.* US 6,124,345 B1 (2001), Example 57; 0.75 g, 1.246 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) and THF (8 mL) was added diethylamine (2.81 mL, 26.9 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 1.5 h and concentrate. The crude product was triturated with DCM, filtered and dried under vacuume to give compound **90** as a white solid. LCMS (M+H) = 380.2 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 10.06 (s, 1H), 8.15 (d, *J*=7.3 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (d, *J*=8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.26 (d, *J*=8.3 Hz, 2H), 6.00 (t, *J*=5.4 Hz, 1H), 5.43 (s, 2H), 5.13 (t, *J*=5.3 Hz, 1H), 4.56 - 4.33 (m, 3H), 3.07 - 2.93 (m, 3H), 2.00 - 1.55 (m, 5H), 1.49 - 1.32 (m, 2H), 0.90 (d, *J*=6.8 Hz, 3H), 0.80 (d, *J*=6.8 Hz, 3H).

To a solution of compound **90** (79 mg, 0.209 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) was added a solution of MAL-dPEG®8-NHS ester (120 mg, 0.174 mmol) in DMSO (1 mL), followed by 2,6-lutidine (37.3 mg, 0.348 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 3 h. A solution of bis(4-nitrophenyl) carbonate (63.5 mg, 0.209 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added, followed by 2,6-lutidine (37.3 mg, 0.348 mmol). The reaction was then stirred at RT for 12 h. DIPEA (0.061 mL, 0.348 mmol) was then added, and the reaction was stirred at RT for 3 h. The crude product mixture was diluted with DMF, filtered, and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column : Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 0-70% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give compound **63** (40 mg, 0.036 mmol, 20.54% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 1119.5.

To compound (**IIa-10**) (3.5mg, 5.00  $\mu$ mol) was added a solution of compound **91** (5.60 mg, 5.00  $\mu$ mol) in DMSO (0.16 mL), followed by DIPEA (2.62  $\mu$ L, 0.015 mmol), and HOAt (0.6 mg, 5.00  $\mu$ mol). The reaction was stirred at RT for 24 h and diluted with DMF, filtered, and purified using reverse phase HPLC (Column: Phenomenex Luna C18 20x100 mm; Mobile Phase A: 10:90 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Mobile Phase B: 90:10 acetonitrile:water with 0.1% TFA; Gradient: 20-80% B over 15 minutes; Flow: 20 mL/min; Detection: UV at 220 nm) to give dimer-linker (**IIIc-02**) (2.1 mg, 1.188  $\mu$ mol, 23.74% yield) as a white solid. LCMS (M+H) = 1679.6.

Analogously following the procedures above, additional dimer-linker compounds having a self-immolating group were prepared:

(**IIIc-03**) LCMS (M+2H)/2 = 876.1.

(**IIIc-04**) LCMS (M+2H)/2 = 790.5.

(**IIIc-05**) LCMS (M+H) = 1650.9.

(**IIIc-06**) LCMS (M+H) = 1593.9.

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that other dimer-linker compounds, type (c) or otherwise, having PABC self-immolating groups or other can be analogously prepared, *mutatis mutandis*.

#### Example 18 – THIQ-AZI dimers

This example and **Fig. 17** relate to the preparation of THIQ-AZI dimers, in particular dimer (**IIc-01**).

A Parr bottle was charged with compound **90a** (CAS Reg. No. 1210045-50-3, 3.0 g, 8.27 mmol) and palladium hydroxide on carbon (20%, 50% wet; 1.0 g, 0.712 mmol) suspended in ethanol (60 mL) and acetic acid (10 mL). This was placed on the Parr apparatus and charged with 55 psi hydrogen. After shaking overnight, the reaction mixture was filtered through CELITE™ and the filtrate was concentrated to leave a residue. The residue was diluted with EtOAc and washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 20%-50% EtOAc in hexanes to afford the racemic product (2.49g, 83% yield) as a clear oil. LCMS (M+H) = 365.55. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  8.44 - 8.16 (m, 2H), 7.79 - 7.42 (m, 1H), 4.48 (br. s., 1H), 3.74 (d, *J*=6.5 Hz, 2H), 3.36 - 3.18 (m, 1H), 3.18 - 3.00 (m, 1H), 1.65 - 1.49 (m, 9H), 0.75 (s, 9H), 0.11 - 0.23 (m, 6H). This racemate was further purified by chiral SFC chromatography (Lux Cellulose-2 21.2 x 250mm, 5 $\mu$ M column, eluting with 30% acetonitrile in CO<sub>2</sub> at 140

bar and 35 °C.) to afford two peaks. The second to elute peak ((-) isomer) was collected to afford azaindoline **91** as a colorless oil (1.01g, 34% yield overall).

A vial was charged with azaindoline **91** (850 mg, 2.332 mmol) in MeOH (4 mL). To this was added 4M HCl in dioxane (8.5 ml, 34.0 mmol). The reaction was stirred at RT overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated to a residue and then taken up in MeOH and ether. This was concentrated again (2x) to afford the deprotected residue. This residue was charged into a flask along with acetonitrile (1 mL). To this was added *tert*-butyl-dimethylsilyl chloride (TBS-Cl, 446 mg, 2.96 mmol) and imidazole (671 mg, 9.86 mmol) and the reaction was stirred at RT for 2 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and washed with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. The organic phase was washed twice and then concentrated to a residue. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 5% (10% NH<sub>4</sub>OH/MeOH) in chloroform. The product was collected and concentrated to compound **92** as a clear oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.00 - 7.84 (m, 2H), 6.77 (br. s., 1H), 6.40 (d, *J*=5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.95 (dd, *J*=9.9, 5.1 Hz, 1H), 3.54 (d, *J*=5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.05 (dd, *J*=16.2, 9.9 Hz, 1H), 2.77 - 2.59 (m, 1H), 0.83 (s, 9H), 0.03 (d, *J*=7.5 Hz, 6H).

A vial was charged with compound **93** (CAS Reg. No. 313644-41-6, 420 mg, 0.863 mmol) in 5mL DMF. To this was added HATU (821 mg, 2.159 mmol). After aging for 30 min, a solution of compound **65** (252 mg, 0.907 mmol) and compound **92** (240 mg, 0.907 mmol) and DIPEA (0.754 mL, 4.32 mmol) in 2mL DMF was added. After aging an additional hour, the mixture was transferred to a flask containing ~100mL water, and the mixture was acidified with 1N HCl. The resultant solids were collected by filtration and washed with water. The wet solids were collected, dissolved in DCM, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated. The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage) eluting with 0-10% MeOH/DCM to afford three products. The middle-eluting peak was heterodimeric amide **94** (353.1 mg, 0.356 mmol, 41.2% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 992.30.

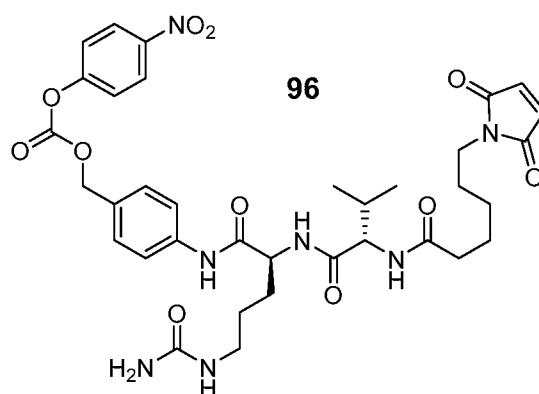
Amide **94** (200 mg, 0.202 mmol) was dissolved in THF (2 mL). To this was added water (200 µl, 11.10 mmol) and P(Me)<sub>3</sub> (605 µL, 0.605 mmol). After aging ~30 min, the solvent was evaporated and the sample was azeotroped with toluene. The residue was dissolved in DCM (10 mL). Pyridine (0.08 mL, 1.00 mmol) was added and the mixture was cooled to -78 °C. Allyl chloroformate **12a** (64.5 µL, 0.605 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 min and then allowed to warm to RT. The mixture was quenched with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, extracted twice with DCM, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The residue was again dissolved in 7:1:1:2 AcOH/THF/MeOH/water (3 mL

total) and stirred overnight. Because the deprotection was sluggish, after stirring overnight, 0.5ml 10% HCl in MeOH was added, resulting in complete deprotection after an additional 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was carefully transferred into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> to neutralize it. The mixture was extracted thrice with DCM, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Biotage), eluting with 3-6% (10% NH<sub>4</sub>OH/MeOH) in chloroform. The main peak was collected to afford compound **95** (95.7 mg, 0.109 mmol, 54.0% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 880.15.

A flask was charged with DMSO (0.018 mL, 0.256 mmol) in 0.5mL DCM and cooled to -78 °C. Oxalyl chloride (0.061 mL, 0.123 mmol) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was aged 10 minutes at the same temperature, at which point a solution of compound **95** (45 mg, 0.051 mmol) in 0.5mL DCM was added dropwise. After aging again for 30 minutes, triethylamine (0.071 mL, 0.511 mmol) was added dropwise. After stirring 30 min at -78 °C, the coldbath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The mixture was quenched with saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and extracted thrice with DCM. The extracts were washed thrice with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, once with brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The crude residue was dissolved in DCM (3 mL) and pyrrolidine (0.017 mL, 0.201 mmol) and palladium tetrakis triphenylphosphine (2.90 mg, 2.51 μmol) were added. The mixture was aged for 1 hour, washed with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and then brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and evaporated to a residue. The residue was purified by prep-HPLC (sunfire ACN/water 0.1% TFA) with sodium NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution placed in the tubes before the run to immediately neutralize the samples. The main peak was collected to afford the expected product by evaporating excess solvent and then extracting with DCM. The product was repurified by biotage DCM/MeOH 3-6% step gradient (1% increase each time). The main peak was collected, azeotroped many times with chloroform to remove methanol and afford THIQ-AZI dimer (**IIc-01**) (7 mg, 8.34 μmol, 16.60% yield). LCMS (M+H) = 672.15.

*Example 19 – Dimer-linker (IIIa-03)*

To a solution of compound **96** (Senter *et al.* 2010; 10 mg, 0.014 mmol) and dimer IIa-16 (13.01 mg, 0.019 mmol) in DMSO (0.5 mL) was added Hunig'sBase (7.10 μL, 0.041 mmol) and stirred at RT overnight. This was purified on Shimadzu R-HPLC using XBridge prep C18, 5μm column and 5-55% acetonitrile/water (0.05% formic acid) over 30 min.



A fraction collected at 24 min provided dimer-linker **IIIa-03** (5.6 mg, 4.36  $\mu$ mol, 32.2 % yield). The fractions with correct mass were filtered through a basic resin (PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP -Resin 1.8 mmol/g; Agilent Part # PL3540-#603) and washed with acetonitrile (5 mL) prior to lyophilization. MS ( $m+1$ ) = 1284.

*Example 20 – Dimer IIa-20 and dimer-linker IIIa-04*

This example and **Figs. 18a** and **18b** relate to the synthesis of dimer (**IIa-20**) and dimer-linker (**IIIa-04**).

To a solution of triphenylphosphine (1.385 g, 5.28 mmol), compound **20** (2 g, 4.40 mmol) and compound **51** (1.165 g, 6.16 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD, 1.026 mL, 5.28 mmol) dropwise at 0 °C. After stirring at RT overnight. Concentration and purification on an ISCO COMBIFLASH™ 120 g column using 0-100% EtOAc/hexane eluent provided alcohol **108** (1.28 g, 2.045 mmol, 46.5 % yield) as white solid. MS ( $m+Na$ ) = 648.2. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.48 (m, 3H), 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.22 (m, 1H), 5.93 (m, 1H), 5.50 (t,  $J=10.0$  Hz, 1H), 5.31 (d,  $J=16.0$  Hz, 1H), 5.22 (dd,  $J=10.8, 1.6$  Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d,  $J=15.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.70 (t,  $J=11.2$  Hz, 1H), 4.63 (m, 2H), 4.43 (m, 1H), 4.30 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 3.97 (m, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.79 (m, 4H), 3.57 (m, 4H), 3.01 (dd,  $J=15.2, 2.0$  Hz, 1H), 2.07 (m, 2H), 1.88 (m, 2H), 0.997 (m, 2H), 0.06 (s, 9H).

A suspension of alcohol **108** (0.64 g, 1.023 mmol) and triethylamine (TEA, 0.214 mL, 1.534 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was cooled to 0 °C and treated with methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl, 0.104 mL, 1.330 mmol). After stirring for 60 min at 0 °C, LCMS showed 50% conversion to product. More TEA (0.214 mL, 1.534 mmol) and MsCl (0.104 mL, 1.330 mmol) was added and stirring was continued for 1 h to get complete conversion. The reaction was quenched with ice cold water (30 mL), extracted with DCM (2x30 mL), and washed

with ice cold water (30 ml). The organic layer was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and concentrated in a rotary evaporator to mesylate **109** (0.713 g, 1.012 mmol, 99 % yield). MS ( $m+1$ ) = 704.2.

To a solution of compound **106** (336 mg, 0.852 mmol) and mesylate **109** (500 mg, 0.710 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) was added  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$  (196 mg, 1.421 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 50 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2x50 mL). The combined organic layers were concentrated and purified on ISCO COMBIFLASH™ 80 g column using 0-100% EtOAc/hexane elution gradient over 45 min provided compound **110** (180 mg, 0.180 mmol, 25.3 % yield). MS ( $m+1$ ) = 1003.3

To a solution of compound **110** (180 mg, 0.180 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added lithium triethylborohydride (SUPER HYDRIDE™, 0.898 mL, 0.898 mmol) at -76 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with cold water (1 mL) and extracted with DCM (3x10 mL). The organic layer was concentrated and treated with DCM/EtOH/water (1:2:1 = 4 mL) and silica gel (1 g) for 2 days. This mixture was filtered through a sintered funnel and the silica gel was washed with DCM-MeOH (8:2, 50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under high vacuum and purified on 40 g silica gel column using MeOH/DCM eluent over 15 min. The 10% MeOH/DCM fraction at 9 min provided compound **111** (151 mg, 0.143 mmol, 80 % yield) as white solid. MS ( $m+1$ ) = 856.3.

To a solution of compound **111** (151 mg, 0.176 mmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added  $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$  (10.19 mg, 8.82  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and pyrrolidine (0.058 mL, 0.706 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under nitrogen at RT. Concentration and purification on an ISCO 24g silica gel column using 0-20% MeOH/DCM provided dimer (**IIa-20**) (42 mg, 0.058 mmol, 32.9 % yield) as white solid. MS ( $m+1$ ) = 688.2.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 1H), 7.48 (d,  $J$  = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (s, 1H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 9H), 7.21 (m, 1H), 6.85 (s, 1H), 6.27 (s, 1H), 5.03 (d,  $J$  = 15.6 Hz, 1H), 4.83 (q,  $J$  = 15.6 Hz, 2H), 4.57 (d,  $J$  = 15.2, 1H), 4.30 (m, 2H), 4.21 (t,  $J$  = 5.2 Hz, 2H), 4.13 (m, 1H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 3.51 (s, 1H), 3.46 (dd,  $J$  = 10.8, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 3.20-3.30 (m, 6H), 3.12 (dd,  $J$  = 15.2, 6.0 Hz, 2H), 2.83 (dd,  $J$  = 15.2, 5.6 Hz, 2H).

To a solution of *p*-nitrophenyl carbonate **96** (20 mg, 0.027 mmol) and dimer (**IIa-20**) (22.37 mg, 0.033 mmol) in DMSO (1 mL) was added DIPEA (0.014 mL, 0.081 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at RT overnight. The reaction product was purified by R-HPLC using an XBridge prep OBD C18, 5  $\mu\text{m}$  column (30x250 mm) and 5-55% acetonitrile/water (0.05% formic acid) over 40 min (4 injections). A fraction collected at 31.8



min was filtered through a basic resin (PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP -Resin 1.8 mmol/g; Agilent Part # PL3540-#603) and washed with acetonitrile (5 mL). Lyophilization provided dimer-linker (**IIIa-04**) (8 mg, 5.91  $\mu$ mol, 21.79 % yield) as white solid. MS (m+1) = 1286.5.

*Example 21 – Dimer IIa-21*

5 This example and **Fig. 19** relate to the synthesis of dimer (**IIa-21**).

A suspension of phenol **72** (68 mg, 0.13 mmol), 1,3-bis(bromomethyl)benzene **97** (17 mg, 0.065 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (42 mg, 0.13 mmol) in acetone (0.4 ml) was warmed to 40 °C for 1 h. The mixture was quenched with 0.1 M citric acid and extracted thrice with EtOAc. The combined organics were washed with brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and  
10 evaporated. The mixture was purified by silica gel chromatography, eluting with a gradient from 30-80% EtOAc in hexanes to afford two compounds. The first to elute was mono-alkylated compound **99** (15.6 mg, 17% yield). LCMS M+H=707.10. The second to elute was dimer **98** (13.5 mg, 18% yield). LCMS M+H=1151.20.

Dimer **98** (13.5 mg, 0.012 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of pyrrolidine in  
15 DCM (0.042 M, 0.7 ml, 0.029 mmol) and Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (2.0 mg, 1.7  $\mu$ mol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 30 min and partitioned between DCM and saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. The phases were separated and the aqueous fraction was extracted twice more with DCM. The combined organics were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to a residue, which was then purified by preparative HPLC (Sunfire C18 prep OBD column 19x100mm, Solvent A =  
20 95% water, 5% Acetonitrile +0.1% TFA; Solvent B = 5% water, 95% Acetonitrile +0.1% TFA. Gradient of 0-100% over 10min. The sample was divided into two equal injections. The fractions containing product were combined and passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub>- MP SPE 500 mg/6 mL cartridge, eluting with acetonitrile to afford a solution of the product as a free base. The bulk of the organic solvent was removed by rotary evaporation and water was  
25 removed by lyophilization to afford dimer (**IIa-21**) as a white powder (5.18 mg, 58% yield). LCMS M+H=719.10. HRMS found: M+H=719.2851, calc'd: 719.2864.

*Example 22 – Dimer IIa-22*

This example and **Fig. 20** relate to the preparation of dimer (**IIa-22**).

A suspension of diol **100** (0.25 g, 1.40 mmol, prepared per *J. Med. Chem.* **2011**,  
30 4350) and NEt<sub>3</sub> (0.58 mL, 4.19 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) was cooled on an ice-water bath and treated with MsCl (0.25 mL, 3.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 2 h, then quenched by the addition of water. The layers of the biphasic

mixture were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted again with a portion of DCM. The combined organic phases were washed with cold dilute HCl (0.05N) followed by brine, and then dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Evaporation of the solvent afforded mesylate **101** as a white solid, which was used without further purification (0.425g, 91% yield) <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400MHz, CHLOROFORM-d)  $\delta$  7.25 (s, 1H), 7.11 (s, 2H), 5.29 - 5.18 (m, 4H), 3.05 (s, 6H).

A suspension of phenol **72** (94 mg, 0.18 mmol), mesylate **101** (30 mg, 0.089 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (73 mg, 0.22 mmol) in acetone (0.4 ml) was warmed to 40 °C for 1 h. The mixture was quenched with 0.1 M citric acid and extracted thrice with EtOAc. The combined organic phases were washed with brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The mixture was purified by silica gel chromatography, eluting with a gradient from 30-80% EtOAc in hexanes to afford dimer **102** (82.6 mg, 77% yield). LCMS M+H=1192.15.

Dimer **102** (41.3 mg, 0.035 mmol) was deprotected according to the method for dimer (**IIa-21**) to afford dimer (**IIa-22**) as a white powder (7.08 mg, 26% yield). LCMS M+H=760.10. HRMS found: M+H=760.2872, calc'd: 760.2878.

*Example 23 – Dimer-linkers IIIb-07 and IIIb-08*

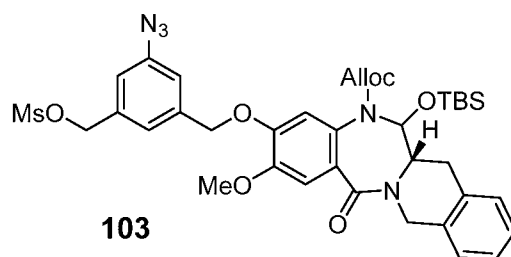
This example and **Fig. 21** relate to the preparation of dimer linkers (**IIIb-07**) and (**IIIb-08**).

Compound **104a** was prepared from phenol **80** and mono-alkylated compound **99** as follows. Phenol **80** (18.6 mg, 0.022 mmol), compound **99** (15.6 mg, 0.022 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (7.18 mg, 0.022 mmol) were suspended in acetone (0.11 mL) and warmed to 40 °C for 1.5 h. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc and washed with 0.1M citric acid. The organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography, eluting with 30-100% EtOAc in hexanes to afford the product **104a** (23.3 mg, 72% yield). LCMS M+H=1472.20.

Dimer **104a** (23.3 mg, 0.016 mmol) was dissolved in THF (0.4 mL) and a solution of TBAF in THF (0.035 mL, 1.0 M, 0.035 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 0.5 h, and partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, the phases separated and the aqueous fraction extracted twice more with DCM. The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to a residue, which was then purified by silica gel chromatography, eluting with a gradient from 0-10% MeOH in DCM to afford compound **105a** (16.4 mg, 83% yield). LCMS M+Na=1265.25.

Dimer **105a** (16.4mg, 0.013 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of pyrrolidine in DCM (0.042 M, 0.8 ml, 0.033 mmol) and Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (1.2 mg, 1.04 μmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 h, partitioned between DCM and saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, the phases separated and the aqueous fraction extracted twice more with DCM. The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to a residue to obtain amine **106a**, which was used without further purification (quantitative yield assumed).

Amine **106a** (13.7 mg, 0.13 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of DIPEA in DMF (0.05 M, 0.31 mL, 0.016 mmol) and compound **84** (8 mg, 0.026 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 20 hours, at which point it was diluted with DMF and purified by preparative HPLC (Sunfire C18 prep OBD column 19x100mm, Solvent A = 95% water, 5% Acetonitrile +0.1% TFA; Solvent B = 5% water, 95% Acetonitrile +0.1% TFA. Gradient of 0-100% over 10 min. The fractions containing product were combined and passed through a PL-HCO<sub>3</sub>- MP SPE 500 mg/6 mL cartridge, eluting with acetonitrile to afford a solution of the product as a free base. The bulk of the organic solvent was removed by rotary evaporation and water was removed by lyophilization to afford dimer-linker (**IIIb-07**) as a white powder (7.10 mg, 42% yield). LCMS M+H=1249.35. HRMS found: M+H = 1249.5221, calc'd: 1249.5241.



Bis-mesylate **101** (100 mg, 0.191 mmol) was reacted with compound **72**, in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **99**, to afford mono-mesylate **103** (74.6 mg, 51% yield). LCMS M+H=764.10.

Mono-mesylate **103** (46.8 mg, 0.061 mmol) was reacted with compound **80** in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **104a**, to afford compound **104b** (68.8 mg, 74% yield). LCMS M+H=1511.95.

Compound **104b** (68.8 mg, 0.046 mmol) was deprotected in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **105a**, to afford compound **105b** (51.4 mg, 88% yield).

Compound **105b** (51.4 mg, 0.040 mmol) was deprotected in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **106a**, to afford amine **106b** (44 mg, 100% yield, used crude in next step).

Amine **106b** (46.8 mg, 0.061 mmol) was reacted with compound **84** in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of dimer-linker (**IIIb-07**) to afford dimer-linker (**IIIb-08**) (13.5 mg, 25% yield). HRMS found: M+H=1290.5245, calc'd: 1290.5255.

*Example 24 – Dimer-linker IIIb-04*

This example and **Fig. 22** relate to the synthesis of dimer-linker (**IIIb-09**).

Bis-iodoethyl ether (46 mg, 0.088 mmol) was reacted with compound **72**, in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound compound **99**, to afford compound **107** (29 mg, 46% yield). LCMS M+H=723.20.

Silyl ether **78** (431 mg, 0.486 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2.0 ml) and water (0.04 ml) and treated with lithium acetate (32 mg, 0.486 mmol). The mixture was warmed to 40 °C for 2.5 h and stirred at RT an additional hour, then the solvent was removed under a stream of nitrogen (over 3 days). The residue was treated with 0.1 M citric acid and extracted thrice with EtOAc. The combined organic phases were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The mixture was purified by silica gel chromatography, eluting with a gradient from 0-10% MeOH in DCM to afford phenol **108** (297 mg, 84% yield). LCMS M+H=730.40.

Mono-iodo compound **107** (29 mg, 0.04 mmol) was reacted with phenol **108** in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **104a**, to afford compound **109** (18.8 mg, 35% yield). LCMS M+Na=1347.15.

Compound **109** (18.8 mg, 0.014 mmol) was deprotected in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of compound **106a**, to afford amine **110** (13 mg, 100% yield, used crude in next step).

Amine **110** (14 mg, 0.014 mmol) was reacted with compound **84** in a manner analogous to that described for the synthesis of dimer-linker (**IIIb-07**), to afford dimer-linker (**IIIb-09**) (8.6 mg, 53% yield). LCMS M+Na=1239.75.

*Example 25 – Dimer-linkers IIIa-05, -06, -07, and -08*

This example and **Fig. 23** relate to the preparation of dimer-linkers **IIIa-05**, **IIIa-06**, **IIIa-07**, and **IIIa-08**. These dimer-linkers have an alkylamino group in the linker

component and can serve as amine donors in a transglutaminase mediated conjugation to make an ADC.

To a solution of compound **54** (850 mg, 0.869 mmol) and compound **111** (CAS Reg. No. 863971-53-3, 666 mg, 0.869 mmol) in NMP (7 mL) was added DIPEA (0.228 mL, 1.303 mmol). The solution was stirred at RT overnight. LCMS showed product formation. The crude reaction was directly subjected to COMBIFLASH™ chromatography on an 120 g silical gel column, eluting with MeOH/DCM over 45 min. The fractions at 18 min provided compound **112** (0.8 g, 57 % yield) as white solid. MS (m+1) = 1605.6.

To a solution of compound **112** (0.7 g, 0.436 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added piperidine (0.5 ml, 5.05 mmol). The solution was stirred at RT for 30 min. LCMS showed the reaction was complete. Concentration and purification on an 80 g COMBIFLASH™ silica gel column using MeOH/DCM over 40 min afforded a 30% MeOH/DCM fraction at 19-23 min, which yielded compound **113** (0.475 g, 0.343 mmol, 79 % yield) as white solid. MS (m+1) = 1383.6. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 10.11 (s, 2H), 8.13 (s, 2H), 7.57 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.23 (m, 14 H), 5.96 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 5.76 (s, 1H), 5.39 (s, 4H), 5.26 (t, J = 6.0 Hz, 4H), 5.08 (dd, J = 22.0, 10.4 Hz, 4H), 5.01 (s, 2H), 4.92 (d, J = 15.6 Hz, 4H), 4.47 (m, 2H), 4.31 (m, 5H), 4.21 (m, 5 H), 4.10 (q, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H), 3.76 (m, 10 H), 3.18 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H), 3.03 (m, 6H), 2.68 (m, 2H), 2.34 (m, 2H), 1.93 (m, 3H), 1.50-1.70 (m, 6H), 1.39 (m, 5H), 0.88 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 3H), 0.78 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 3H), 0.74 (m, 9H), 0.09, 0.10 (m, 9H).

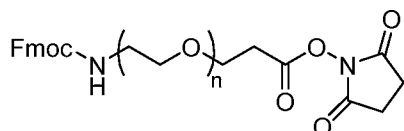
To a solution of compound **113** (975 mg, 0.705 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at -76 °C was added LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH (SUPERHYDRIDE™, 3.52 mL, 3.52 mmol). The solution was stirred for 1 h. LCMS showed the reaction was complete. The reaction was quenched with cold water (1 mL) and concentrated. The resulting residue was treated with DCM/EtOH/water (1:2:1 = 8 mL) and silica gel (1 g) for 3 days. This mixture was filtered through a sintered funnel and the silica gel was washed with DCM-MeOH (8:2, 100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under high vacuum and purified on a 24 g silica gel column using MeOH/DCM over 15 min. The 20% MeOH/DCM fraction provided compound **114** (422 mg, 0.387 mmol, 54.9 % yield) as white solid. MS (m+1) = 1091.6.

To a solution of compound **114** (67 mg, 0.061 mmol) and N-hydroxysuccinimide ester **115** (30.4 mg, 0.068 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was added 2,6-lutidine (0.014 mL, 0.123 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 2 h. LCMS showed almost complete conversion to product **116**. Piperidine (0.1 mL, 1.010 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 1 h. The reaction mixture was injected onto an ISCO 150 g C18

column and eluted with water/acetonitrile (0.05% formic acid) over 30 min. The 34% water/acetonitrile fraction at 27 min was filtered through a basic resin (PL-HCO<sub>3</sub> MP -Resin 1.8 mmol/g; Agilent Part # PL3540-#603) and washed with acetonitrile (5 mL).

Lyophilization provided dimer-linker **IIIa-08** (27.5 mg, 0.020 mmol, 33.1 % yield) as a white solid. MS (m+1) = 1204.6.

Dimer-linkers **IIIa-05** (MS (m+1) = 1338.5), **IIIa-06** (MS (m+1) = 1514.06), and **IIIa-07** (MS (m+1) = 1250.2) were analogously prepared from compound **114**, using the corresponding N-hydroxysuccinimide esters.



CAS Reg. No. 1807534-85-5, n = 2

CAS Reg. No. 1314378-14-7, n = 4

CAS Reg. No. 1334170-03-4, n = 8

#### Example 26 – Biological activity of dimers

The cytotoxic activity of dimers of this invention was tested against H226 lung cancer, 786-O renal cancer, N87 gastric cancer, and/or OVCAR3 ovarian cancer cell lines. The ability of dimers to inhibit cell proliferation can be measured by either an ATP luminescence assay or an MTS cell proliferation assay. Generally, these two methods yield comparable results.

This is a general procedure for an ATP luminescence assay: Cells are seeded at 1 x 10<sup>3</sup> cells/well in 96-well plates for 3 h for ATP CellTiterGlo™ assays, respectively. Serial dilutions (1:3) of compounds are added to the wells. Plates are allowed to incubate for 72 h. A CellTiterGlo™ cell viability kit from Promega is used to measure ATP content of cells treated with test compounds following manufacturer's instruction. A decrease in the ATP content is a measure of decrease in cellular viability. The EC<sub>50</sub> value – the concentration at which an agent reduces cell viability by 50% of the maximum effect – can be calculated using PRISM™ software, version 5.0 (GraphPad Software, La Jolla, CA, USA).

The MTS cell proliferation assay was performed as follows: CellTiter 96 Aqueous Non-Radioactive Cell proliferation Kit from Promega (Madison, WI) is used to determine the number of viable cells in cell proliferation assay. Tumor cells are plated at certain seeding densities in sterile 384-well black clear bottom Matrix plates at 40 µL per well and incubated overnight at 37 °C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> before assaying. On the next day, one set of cell plates (10 plates) is used to determine time zero cell density, and 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-5-(3-

carboxymethoxyphenyl)-2-(4-sulfophenyl)-2H-tetrazolium is added at 4  $\mu$ L/well into 10 plates followed by incubation at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> for three hours. This tetrazolium reagent is bio-reduced by liver cells to form a formazan product which is soluble in aqueous solution. Absorbance at 490 nm is measured on an Envision reader (Perkin Elmer, Boston, MA). On the same day, compounds are added into remaining cell plates (T72 plates) and incubated at 37 °C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. After 72 hours, 4  $\mu$ L MTS reagents are then added into those cell plates. The plates are further incubated at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> for three hours and the absorbance values at A490 were measured on an Envision reader.

Results are presented in Table IA:

Table IA: Biologic Activity of Dimers			
Dimer	Cancer Cell Line: EC <sub>50</sub> (pM)		
	H226	N87	OVCAR3
IIa-01	—	16	150
IIa-02	46-180	49-150	77-120
IIa-03	410	460	180
IIa-04	8000	5700	2600
IIa-05	150	150	90
IIa-10	20	30	20
IIa-16	188	—	—
IIa-18	3200	—	—
IIa-20	—	1.3	—
IIa-21	—	0.02	—
IIa-22	—	0.05	—
IIb-01	440	330	220
IIb-03	150	110	330
IIc-01	—	0.28	—

10

Additional results, testing against DMS 79 and H187 small-cell lung cancer cell lines, are presented in Table IB.

Table IB: Biologic Activity of Dimers		
Dimer	Cancer Cell Line: IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	
	DMS 79	H187
Ib-03	0.003	0.002
Ia-16	0.006	0.005

*Example 27 – Biological activity of conjugates*

Dimer-linker compounds were conjugated to several antibodies, following the general procedure described hereinabove: antibody 4A6 (anti-glypican 3 antibody; Terrett *et al.*, US 8,680,247 B2 (2014)); antibody 1F4 (anti-CD70 antibody; Coccia *et al.*, US 2010/0150950 A1 (2010)); and antibody 6A4 (anti-mesothelin antibody; Terrett *et al.*, US 8,268,970 B2 (2012)). The CDR sequences and other sequence and structural information of these antibodies is disclosed in the aforecited references and such information is incorporated herein by reference.

Tests were conducted against N87 gastric cancer cells and Hep 3B liver cancer cells. Activity was measured using a <sup>3</sup>H thymidine assay (Cong *et al.* 2014). N87 cells express mesothelin but not CD70 or glypican-3. Hep 3B cells express glypican-3 but not mesothelin.

Results are provided in Table IIA and IIB. Comparative data is also provided for conjugates of a PBD-PBD dimer-linker, compound A:

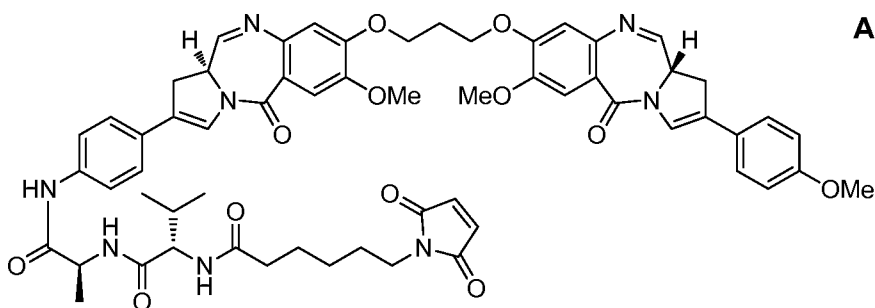




Table IIA: Biologic Activity of Conjugates					
Ref.	Conjugate			Cell Line IC <sub>50</sub> (pM)	
	Antibody (antigen)	Dimer-linker	DAR	N87	Hep3B
1	6A4 (mesothelin)	IIIa-01	0.9-1.6	3-11	
2	6A4 (mesothelin)	IIIb-01	1.9-2.6	46-57	1,400
3	6A4 (mesothelin)	IIIb-03	1	1,300	—
4	6A4 (mesothelin)	IIIc-01	1.1-1.2	2-9	—
5	6A4 (mesothelin)	IIIc-08	2.9	130	—
6	6A4 (mesothelin)	A	1	30	—
7	4A6 (glypican 3)	IIIb-01	2.7	14,000	28
8	1F4 (CD70)	IIIa-01	0.6-1.5	2,900-3,400	—
9	1F4 (CD70)	IIIb-01	2	5,600	—
10	1F4 (CD70)	IIIb-03	1	6,700	—
11	1F4 (CD70)	IIIc-01	0.83-1.1	1,200	—
12	1F4 (CD70)	IIIc-08	2.3	1,200	—
13	1F4 (CD70)	A	1.1	2,300	—

Table IIB: Biologic Activity of Conjugates					
Ref.	Conjugate			Cell Line IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	
	Antibody (antigen)	Dimer-linker	DAR	N87	786-O
14	Anti-mesothelin	IIIa-01	—	0.01	—
15	Ant-CD70	IIIa-01	—	—	0.02
16	Anti-mesothelin	IIIa-03	—	0.07	—
17	Anti-mesotheln	IIIb-01	—	0.06	—
18	Anti-CD70	IIIb-01	—	—	0.05
19	Anti-mesothelin	IIIb-02	—	0.1	—
20	Anti-mesothelin	IIIb-03	—	1.23	—
21	Anti-CD70	IIIb-03	—	—	0.06
22	Anti-mesothelin	IIIc-01	—	0.01	—
23	Anti-CD70	IIIc-01	—	—	0.01
24	Anti-mesothelin	IIIc-08	—	0.13	—
25	Anti-CD70	IIIc-08	—	—	0.02

Additional results, testing against DMS 79 and H187 small-cell lung cancer cell lines, which express the antigen fucosyl GM1, are presented in Table IIC.

Table IIC: Biologic Activity of Conjugates					
Ref.	Conjugate			Cell Line: IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	
	Antibody	Dimer-Linker	DAR	DMA 79	H187
26	Anti-fucosyl GM1	IIIa-03	~2	0.6-1.7	0.5-1.0

Yet additional results, against N87, H226, 786-O cancer cell lines are presented in Table IID. The antibodies having an N297A substitution were conjugated using transglutaminase, as discussed above. The N297A mutation makes Q295 accessible as an amine acceptor for transglutaminase to make conjugates with a theoretical DAR of 2, although in practice conjugates with DARs in the range of 1.5 to 2 are obtained.

N87 is a stomach (gastric) cancer cell line that expresses mesothelin but not CD70 or fucosyl GM1. H226 is a lung cancer cell line that expresses mesothelin but not CD70 or fucosyl GM1. 786-O is a renal cancer cell line that expresses CD70 but not mesothelin or fucosyl GM1.

Table IID: Biologic Activity of Conjugates					
Ref.	Conjugate			Cancer Cell Line	EC <sub>50</sub> (nM)
	Antibody	Dimer-Linker	DAR		
27	Anti-mesothelin*	IIIa-05	—	N87	0.037
28	Anti-fucosyl GM1*	IIIa-05	—	N87	16.27
29	Anti-mesothelin*	IIIa-06	—	N87	0.028
30	Anti-fucosyl GM1*	IIIa-06	—	N87	6.9
31	Anti-mesothelin	IIIa-03	3	N87	0.026
32	Anti-CD70	IIIa-03	2.8	N87	3.4
33	Anti-fucosyl GM1*	IIIa-05	—	H226	7.4
34	Anti-mesothelin*	IIIa-06	—	H226	0.011
35	Anti-fucosyl GM1*	IIIa-06	—	H226	4.0
36	Anti-mesothelin *	IIIa-05	—	H226	0.012
37	Anti-mesothelin	IIIa-03	3	H226	0.0070
38	Anti-CD70	IIIa-03	2.8	H226	0.54
39	Anti-mesothelin	IIIa-08	3	786-O	60
40	Anti-CD70	IIIa-03	2.8	786-O	0.19
41	Anti-mesothelin*	IIIa-06	—	786-O	45
42	Anti-fucosyl GM1*	IIIa-06	—	786-O	44

\* Antibody has N297A substitution.

In one embodiment, in conjugates of this invention the antibody is an anti-mesothelin, anti-CD70, anti-glypican 3, or anti-fucosyl GM1 antibody.

The foregoing detailed description of the invention includes passages that are chiefly or exclusively concerned with particular parts or aspects of the invention. It is to be understood that this is for clarity and convenience, that a particular feature may be relevant in more than just the passage in which it is disclosed, and that the disclosure herein includes all the appropriate combinations of information found in the different passages. Similarly, although the various figures and descriptions herein relate to specific embodiments of the invention, it is to be understood that where a specific feature is disclosed in the context of a particular figure or embodiment, such feature can also be used, to the extent appropriate, in the context of another figure or embodiment, in combination with another feature, or in the invention in general.

Further, while the present invention has been particularly described in terms of certain preferred embodiments, the invention is not limited to such preferred embodiments. Rather, the scope of the invention is defined by the appended claims.

#### REFERENCES

Full citations for the following references cited in abbreviated fashion by first author (or inventor) and date earlier in this specification are provided below. Each of these references is incorporated herein by reference for all purposes.

- Antonow *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* **2010**, 53, 2927.
- Beau-Larvor *et al.*, WO 2014/174111 A1 (2014).
- Bose *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1992**, 114(12), 4939.
- Bouchard *et al.*, US 8,404,678 B2 (2013).
- Chari *et al.*, WO 2013/177481 A1 (2013).
- Commercon *et al.*, US 8,481,042 B2 (2013) [2013a].
- Commercon *et al.*, US 2013/0137659 A1 (2013) [2013b].
- Fishkin *et al.*, US 8,765,740 B2 (2014).
- Flygare *et al.*, US 2013/0266595 A1 (2013).
- Gauzy *et al.*, US 8,163,736 B2 (2012).
- Gregson *et al.*, *Chem. Comm.* **1999** (9), 797.
- Gregson *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2001**, 11, 2859 [2001a].
- Gregson *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* **2001**, 44, 737 [2001b].

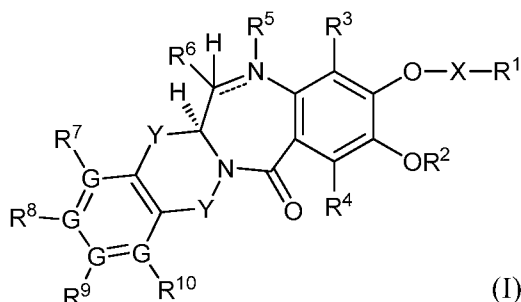
- Gregson *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* **2004**, 47, 1161.
- Gregson *et al.*, US 7,612,062 B2 (2009).
- Hartley, *Exp. Opinion Investigational Drugs* **2011**, 20(6), 733.
- Hartley *et al.*, *Investigational New Drugs* **2012**, 30, 950.
- 5 Howard, US 2014/0120118 A1 (2014) [2014a].
- Howard, US 2014/0127239 A1 (2014) [2014b].
- Howard, WO 2014/096365 A1 (2014) [2014c].
- Howard, WO 2014/096368 A1 (2014) [2014d].
- Howard, WO 2014/140174 A1 (2014) [2014e].
- 10 Howard *et al.*, US 2007/0191349 A1 (2007).
- Howard *et al.*, US 7,528,126 B2 (2009) [2009a].
- Howard *et al.*, US 7,557,099 B2 (2009) [2009b].
- Howard *et al.*, US 7,741,319 B2 (2010).
- Howard *et al.*, US 2011/0256157 A1 (2011).
- 15 Howard *et al.*, US 8,501,934 B2 (2013) [2013a].
- Howard *et al.*, US 8,592,576 B2 (2013) [2013b].
- Howard *et al.*, US 2013/0028919 A1 (2013) [2013c].
- Howard *et al.*, WO 2013/041606 A1 (2013) [2013e].
- Howard *et al.*, US 8,697,688 B2 (2014) [2014a].
- 20 Howard *et al.*, US 2014/0120118 A1 (2014).
- Howard *et al.*, US 2014/0234346 A1 (2014) [2014b].
- Howard *et al.*, US 2014/0274907 A1 (2014) [2014c].
- Howard *et al.*, US 2014/0294868 A1 (2014).
- Howard *et al.*, WO 2014/096368 A1 (2014).
- 25 Howard *et al.*, WO 2014/140174 A1 (2014).
- Howard *et al.*, WO 2014/140862 A2 (2014) [2014d].
- Jeffrey *et al.*, *Bioconj. Chem.* **2013**, 24, 1256.
- Jeffrey *et al.*, US 2014/0286970 A1 (2014) [2014a].
- Jeffrey *et al.*, US 2014/0302066 A1 (2014) [2014b].
- 30 Kothakonda *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **2004**, 14, 4371.
- Li *et al.*, US 8,426,402 B2 (2013).
- Li *et al.*, WO 2014/031566 A1 (2014).
- Liu *et al.*, US 7,244,724 B2 (2007).

- Schrama *et al.*, *Nature Rev. Drug Disc.* **2006**, 5, 147.
- Senter *et al.*, US 7,659,241 B2 (2010).
- Thurston *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.* **1996**, 61(23), 8141.
- Thurston *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* **1999**, 42, 1951.
- 5 Thurston *et al.*, US 7,049,311 B1 (2006).
- Thurston *et al.*, US 7,407,951 B1 (2008).
- Zhao *et al.*, WO 2014/080251 A1 (2014).

## CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

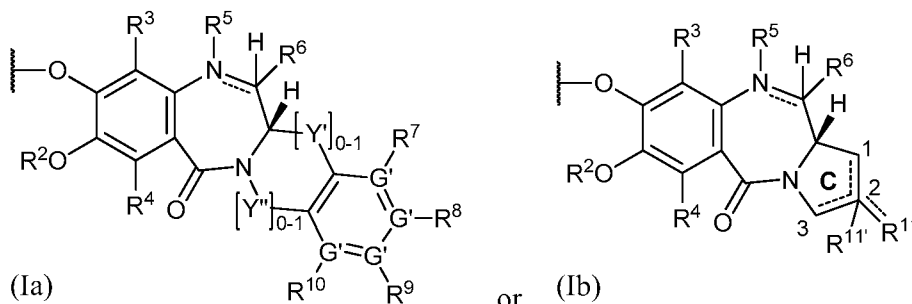
1. A benzodiazepine dimer having a structure represented by formula (I)



(I)

5 wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is according to formula (Ia) or formula (Ib):



(Ia)

or (Ib)

;

each G and G' is C or N, with the proviso that no more than two Gs or two G's are N;

each R<sup>2</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl;

- 10 each R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), cyano, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, or NO<sub>2</sub>;

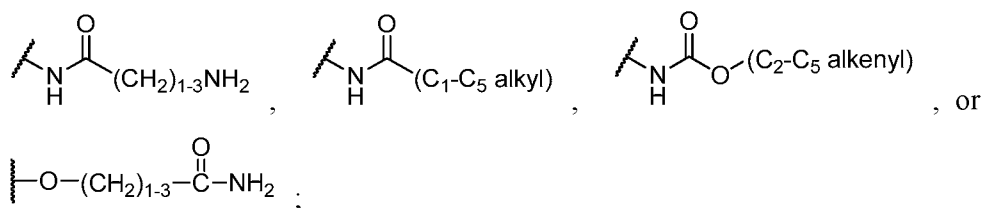
each double line  $\equiv$  in a diazepine ring system independently represents a single bond or a double bond;

- 15 each R<sup>5</sup> is H if the double line  $\equiv$  to the N to which it is attached – *i.e.*, with which it is associated – is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

each R<sup>6</sup> is H, OH, SO<sub>3</sub>Na, or SO<sub>3</sub>K if the double line  $\equiv$  to the C to which it is attached – *i.e.*, with which it is associated – is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

- 20 each R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and R<sup>10</sup> is independently H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, C $\equiv$ C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with

$(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ ,



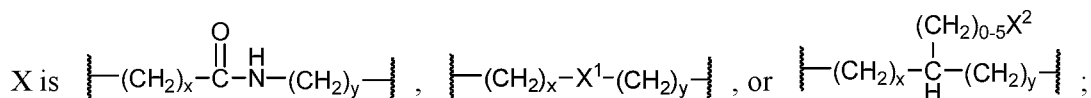
- 5 or where a  $\text{R}^7$ ,  $\text{R}^8$ ,  $\text{R}^9$ , or  $\text{R}^{10}$  is attached to – *i.e.*, is associated with– to a G or G' that is N, such  $\text{R}^7$ ,  $\text{R}^8$ ,  $\text{R}^9$ , or  $\text{R}^{10}$  is absent;

the dotted lines in ring C of formula (Ib) indicate the optional presence of a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2- $\text{R}^{11}$  double bond;

$\text{R}^{11}$  is H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, =CH(C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl), CH=CH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub> $\text{X}^2$ , C≡C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub> $\text{X}^2$ ,

- 10 C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl, OH, O(C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl),  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$ , 4- to 7-membered aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$ ,  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ ;
- 15

$\text{R}^{11}$  is absent if a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2- $\text{R}^{11}$  double bond is present and otherwise is H;



$\text{X}^1$  is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, NH, S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkylene or heterocycloalkylene unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , 6-membered arylene unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , or 5-membered heteroarylene unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ ;

20

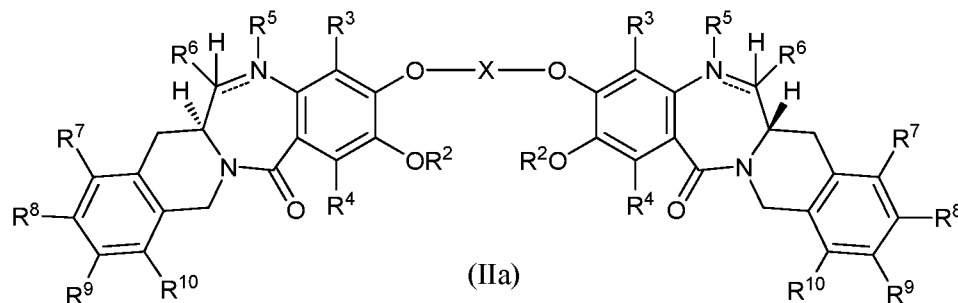
each  $\text{X}^2$  is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, O(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylene), CO<sub>2</sub>H, N<sub>3</sub>, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, SH, CHO, N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), NHNH<sub>2</sub>, or C(=O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>;

- 25 x and y are independently 1, 2, or 3;

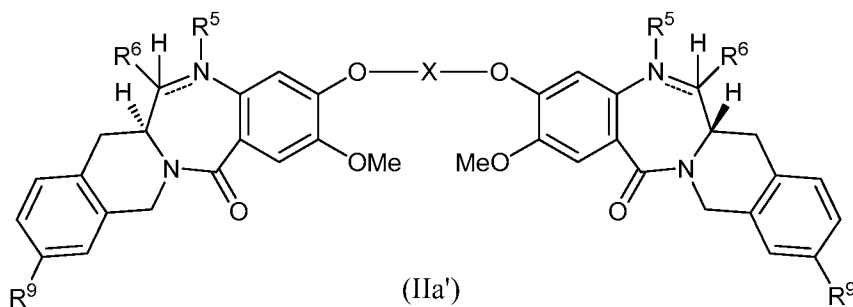
each Y is independently CH<sub>2</sub>, C=O, or CHR<sup>12</sup>; wherein each R<sup>12</sup> is independently F, Cl, Br, or C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl; and

$Y'$  and  $Y''$  are independently  $CH_2$ ,  $C=O$ , or  $CHR^{12}$ ; wherein each  $R^{12}$  is independently F, Cl, Br, or  $C_1$ - $C_3$  alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of  $Y'$  and  $Y''$  is present (*i.e.*, the associated subscript is 1);  
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

- 5    2.    A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure represented by formula (IIa)

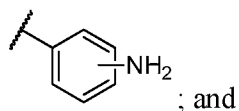


3.    A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 2, having a structure represented by formula (IIa'):

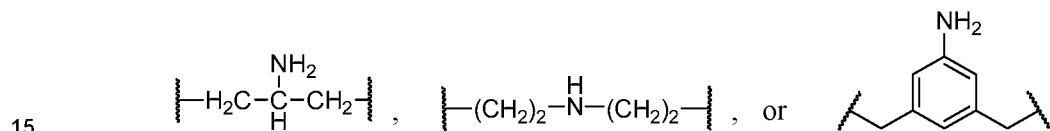


wherein

each  $R^9$  is independently H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or

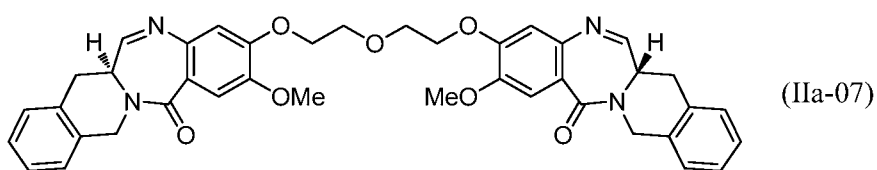
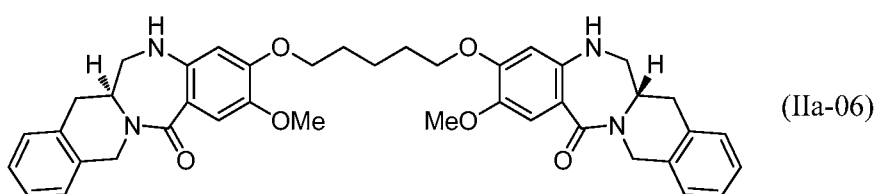
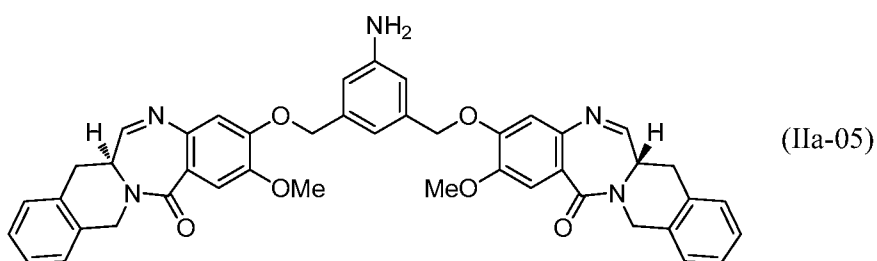
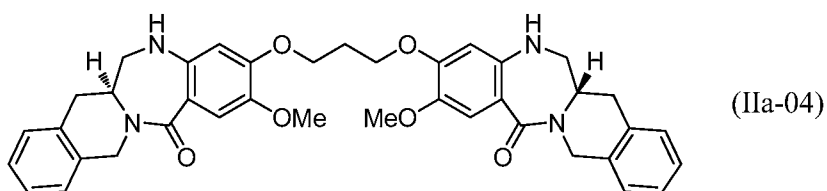
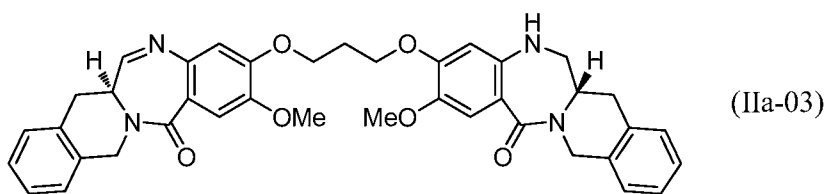
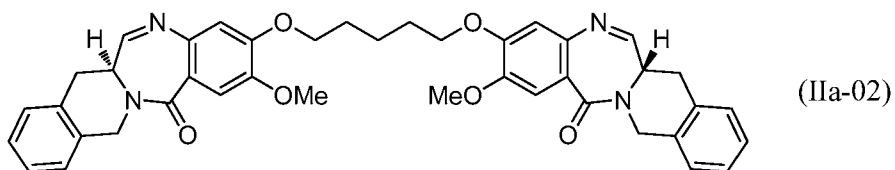
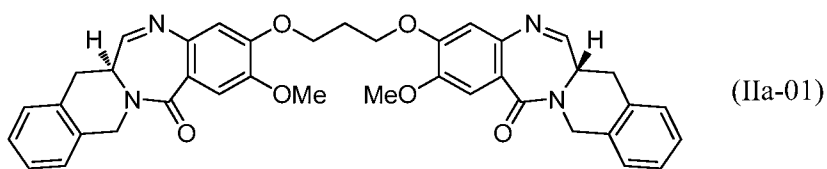


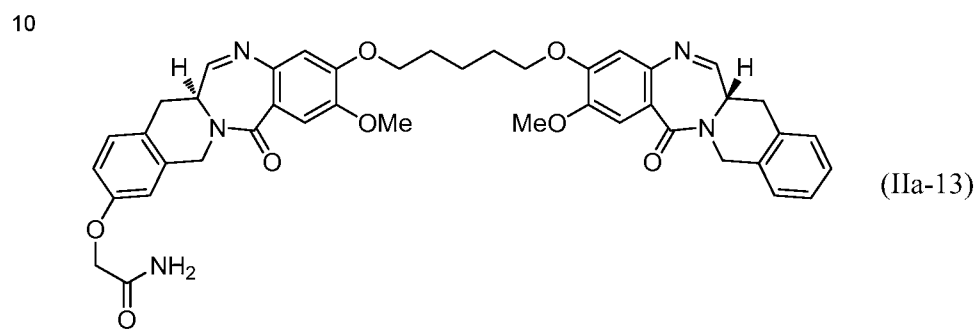
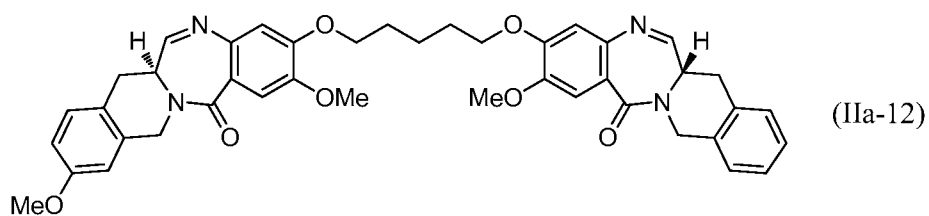
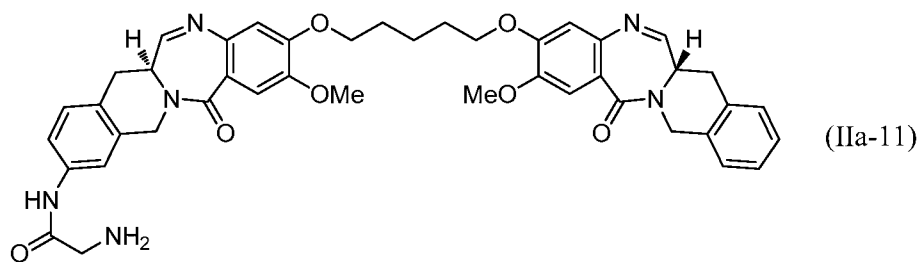
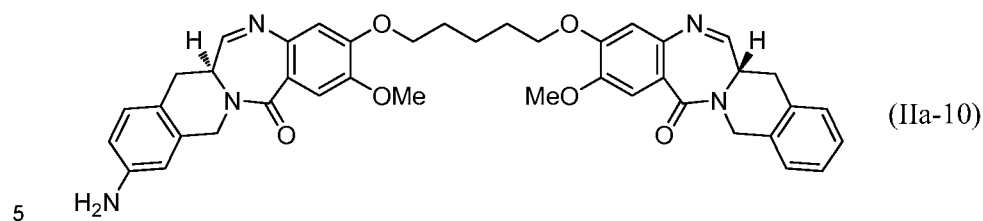
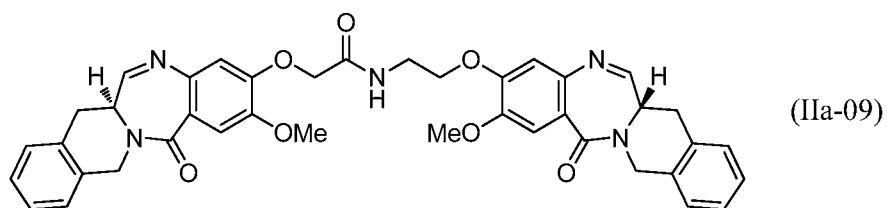
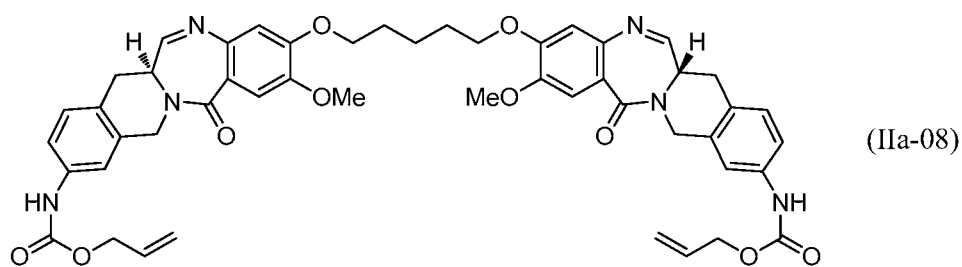
X is  $-(CH_2)_3-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_5-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2-$ ,  $-CH_2C(=O)NH-(CH_2)_2-$ ,

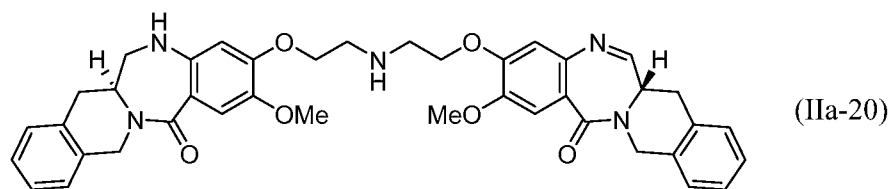
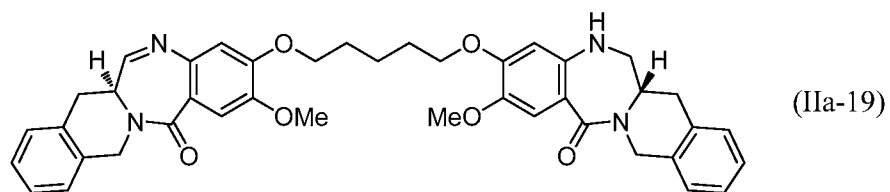
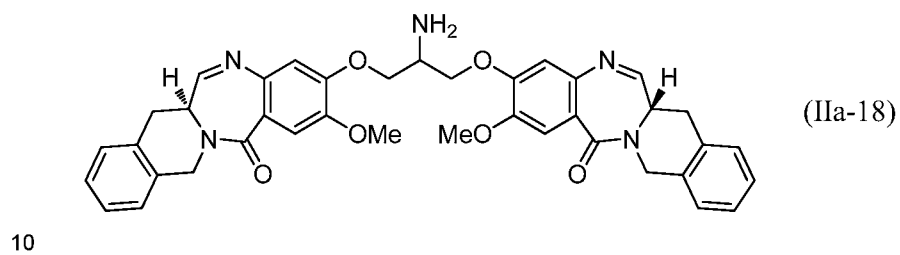
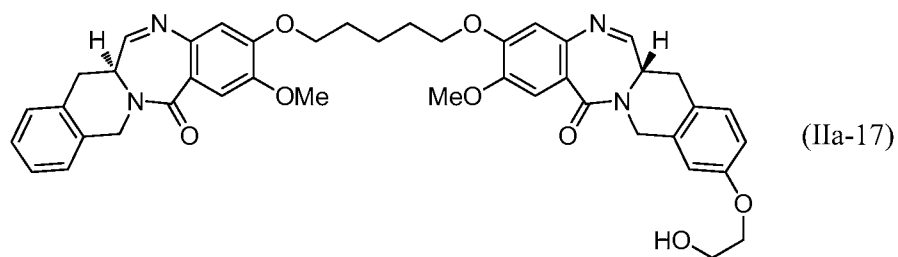
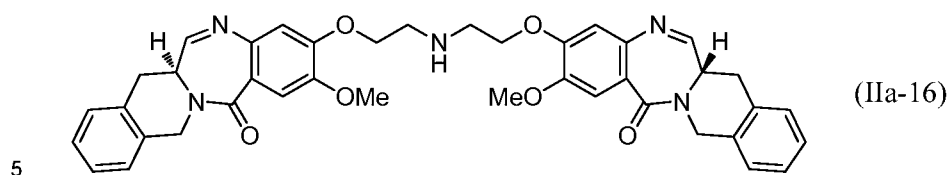
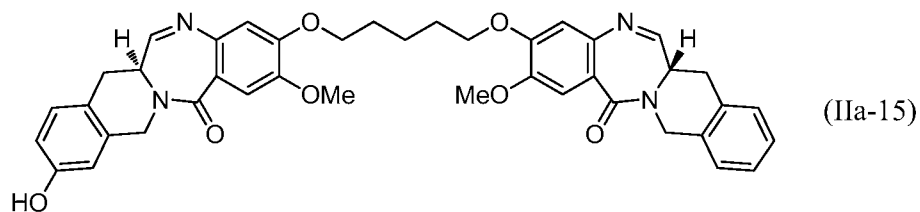
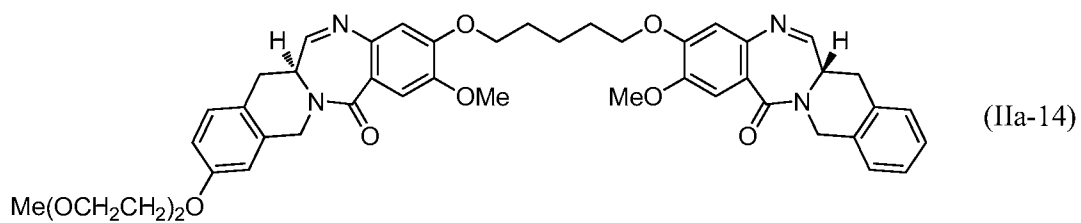


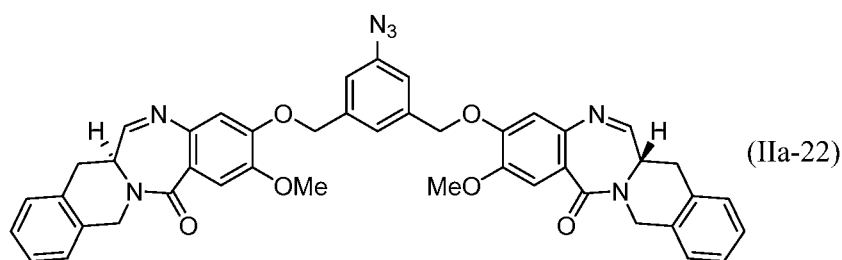
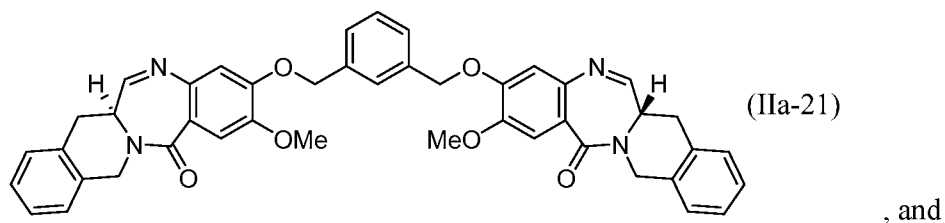
4.    A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure selected from the group consisting of:



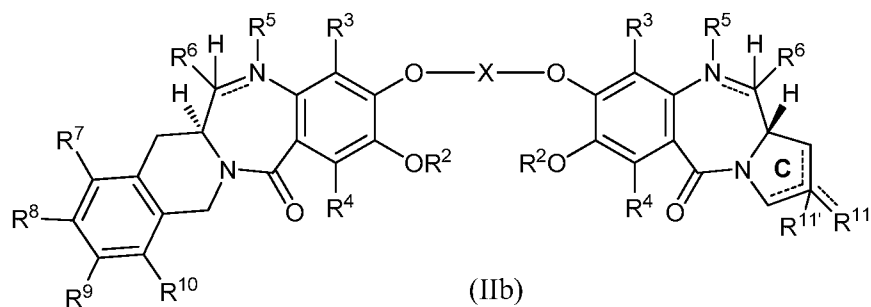




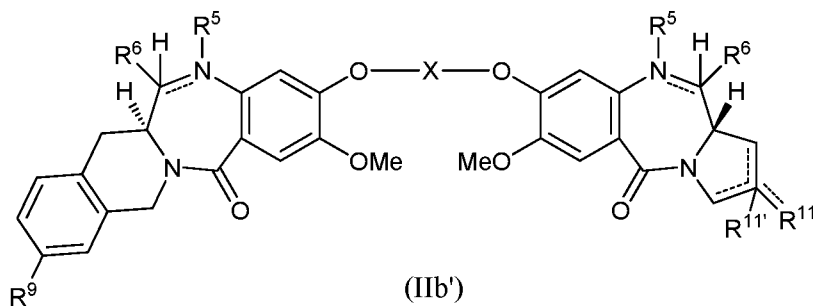




- 5 **5.** A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure represented by formula (IIb):



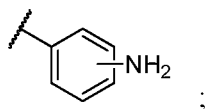
- 6.** A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 5, having a structure represented by formula (IIb'):



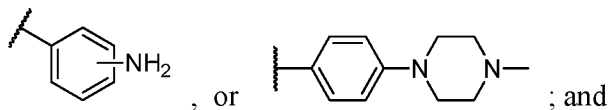
10

wherein

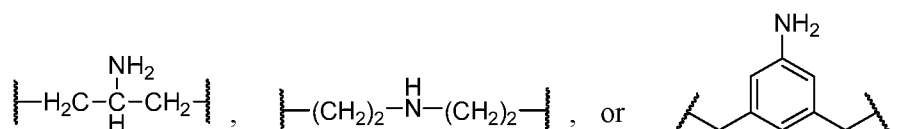
$R^9$  is H, OH, OMe,  $NH_2$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $O(CH_2CH_2O)_{1-8}Me$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2OH$ , or



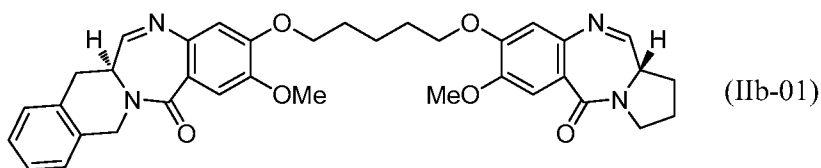
$R^{11}$  is H,  $=CH_2$ ,  $CH=CHMe$ ,  $=CHMe$ ,  $C\equiv CCH_2NH_2$ ,



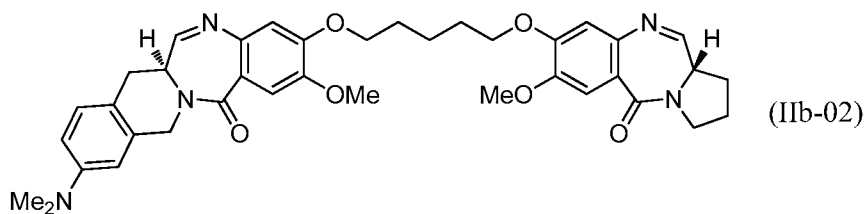
5 X is  $-(CH_2)_3-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_5-$ ,  $-(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2-$ ,  $[-CH_2-C(=O)-NH-(CH_2)_2-]$ ,



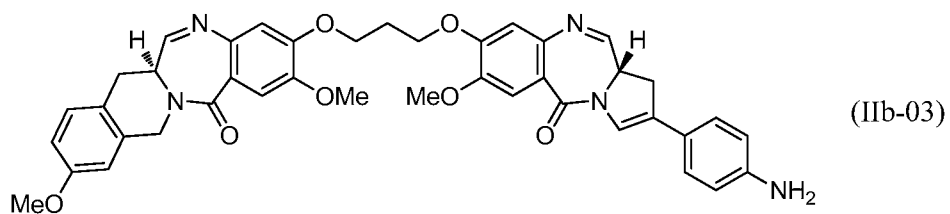
7. A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure selected from the group consisting of:



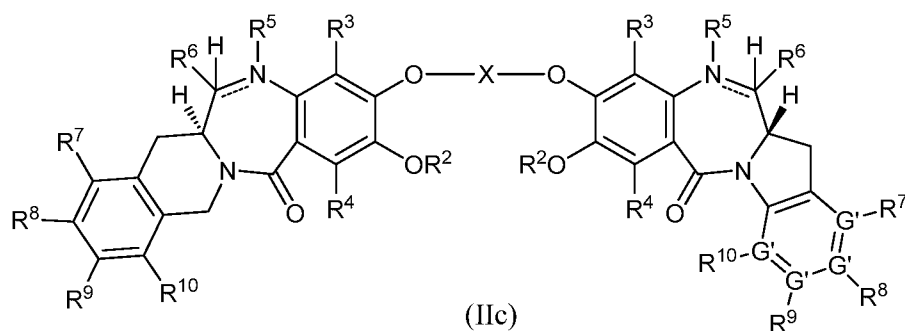
10



, and



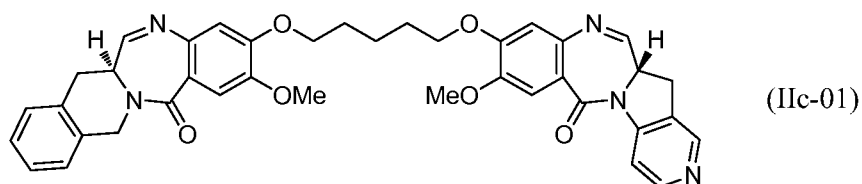
8. A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure represented by  
15 formula (IIc):



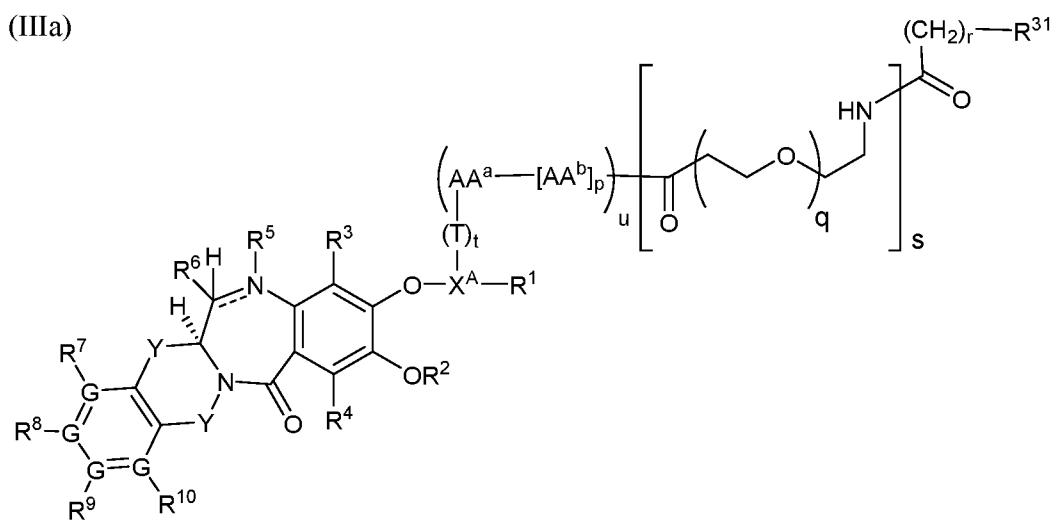
wherein

one G' is N and the others are C.

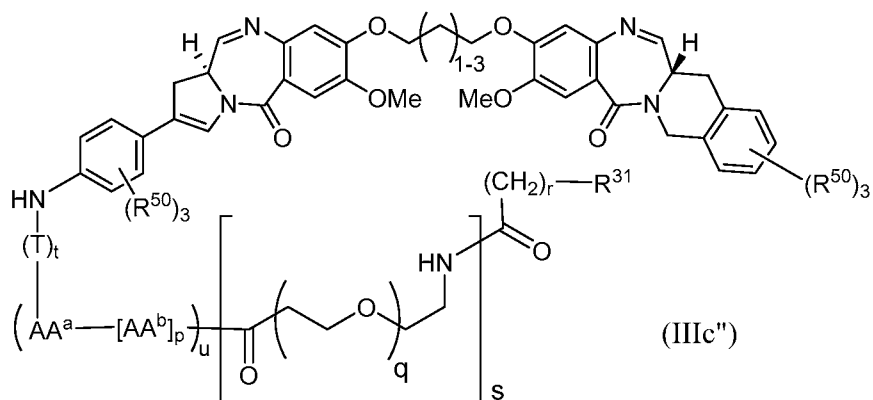
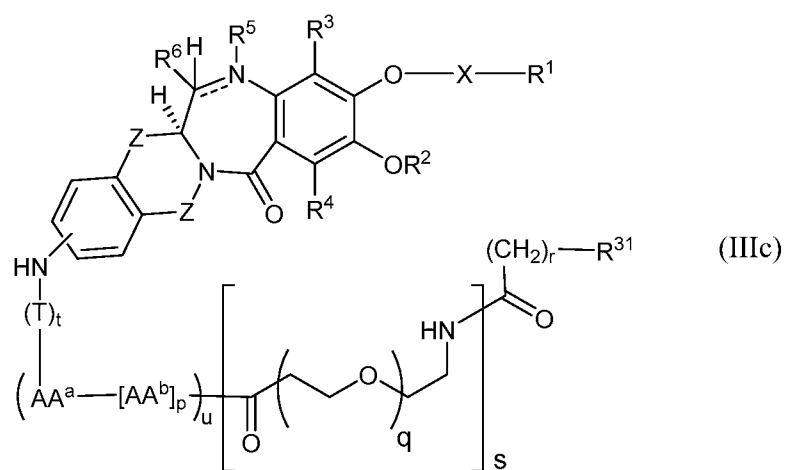
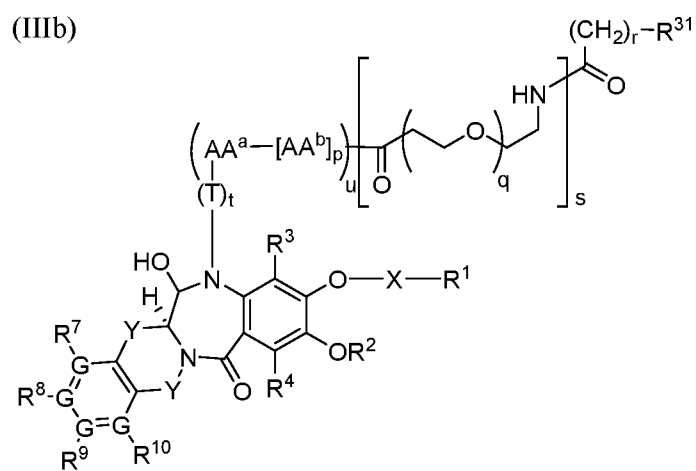
9. A benzodiazepine dimer according to claim 1, having a structure represented by  
5 formula (IIc-01):



10. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound having a structure represented by formula  
(IIIa), (IIIb), (IIIc) or (IIIc''):



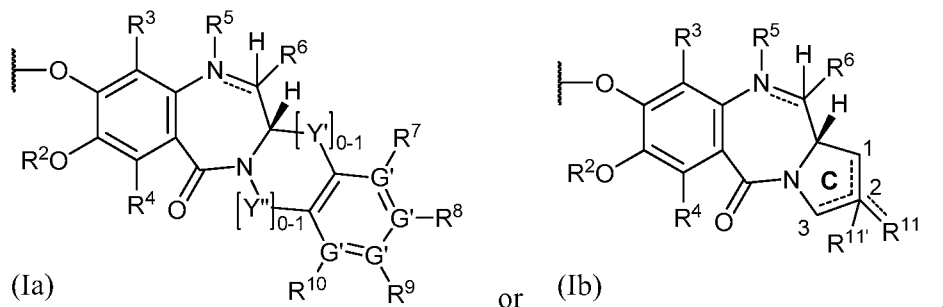
10



5

wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is according to formula **(Ia)** or formula **(Ib)**:



each G and G' is C or N, with the proviso that no more than two Gs or two G's are N;

each R<sup>2</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl;

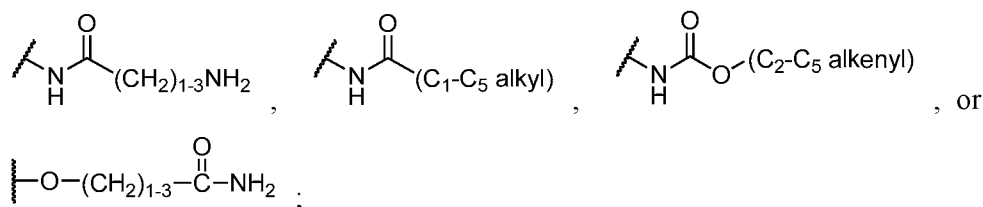
5 each R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), cyano, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, or NO<sub>2</sub>;

each double line ===== in a diazepine ring system independently represents a single bond or a double bond;

10 each R<sup>5</sup> is H if the double line ===== to the N to which it is attached is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

each R<sup>6</sup> is H, OH, SO<sub>3</sub>Na, or SO<sub>3</sub>K if the double line ===== to the C to which it is attached is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

15 each R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and R<sup>10</sup> is independently H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, C≡C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>,



20 or where a R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is attached to a G or G' that is N, such R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is absent;

the dotted lines in ring C of formula **(Ib)** indicate the optional presence of a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond;

25 R<sup>11</sup> is H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, =CH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), CH=CH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, C≡C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl),



(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 4- to 7-membered aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>;

R<sup>11</sup> is absent if a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond is present and otherwise is H; each R<sup>50</sup> is independently H, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkylene), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkynyl), F, Cl, Br, or CN;

X is  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{---}\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}\text{---}\text{N---}(\text{CH}_2)_y\text{---}$ ,  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{---X}^1\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_y\text{---}$ , or  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{---}\overset{(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_y\text{---}$ ;

X<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, NH, S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkylene or heterocycloalkylene unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 6-membered arylene unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, or 5-membered heteroarylene unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>;

each X<sup>2</sup> is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkylene), CO<sub>2</sub>H, N<sub>3</sub>, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, SH, CHO, N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), NHNH<sub>2</sub>, or C(=O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>;

x and y are independently 1, 2, or 3;

each Y is independently CH<sub>2</sub>, C=O, or CHR<sup>12</sup>; wherein each R<sup>12</sup> is independently F, Cl, Br, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl; and

Y' and Y'' are independently CH<sub>2</sub>, C=O, or CHR<sup>12</sup>; wherein each R<sup>12</sup> is independently F, Cl, Br, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, with the proviso that at least one of Y' and Y'' is present;

T is a self-immolating group;

t is 0 or 1;

AA<sup>a</sup> and each AA<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from the group consisting of alanine, β-alanine, γ-aminobutyric acid, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, γ-carboxyglutamic acid, citrulline, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, norleucine, norvaline, ornithine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine;

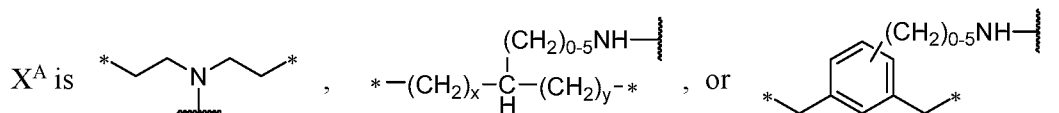
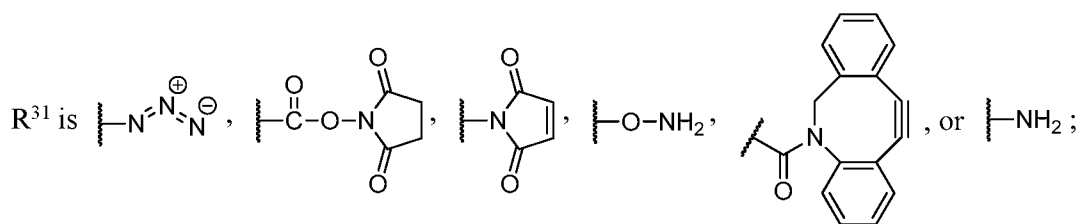
u is 0 or 1;

p is 1, 2, 3, or 4;

q is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, or 12;

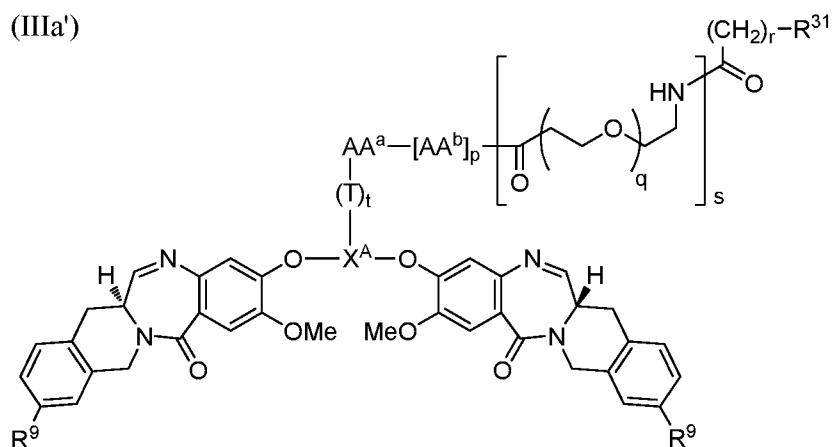
r is 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5;

s is 0 or 1;



- 5 where each x and y is 1, 2, or 3 with the proviso that the sum of x and y is 2 or 4; the asterisks (\*) indicate the positions of bonding of each  $X^A$  to the adjacent O and  $R^1$ ; and the wavy line  $\text{~~~~~}$  indicates the position of bonding of each  $X^A$  to T if T is present or to  $AA^a$  if T is absent.

11. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure represented by formula (IIIa')

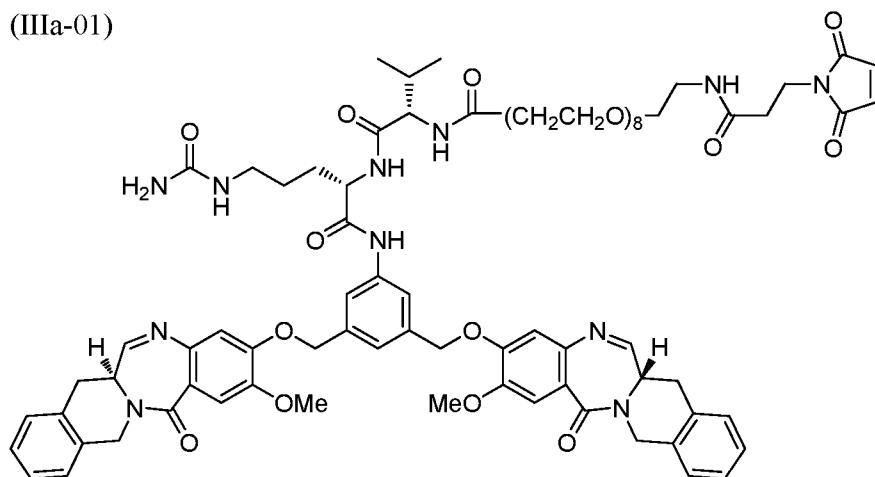


wherein

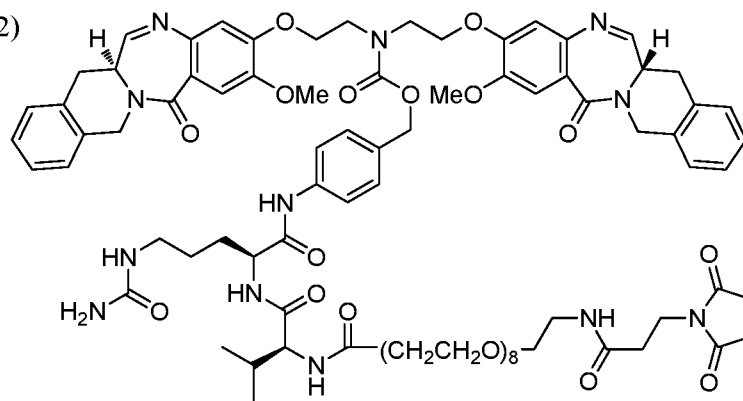
each  $R^9$  is independently H,  $\text{O(CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O)}_{1-4}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{(CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O)}_{1-4}\text{(C1-C}_3\text{ alkyl)}$ , OH, Cl, F, or Br.

12. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure selected from the group consisting of:

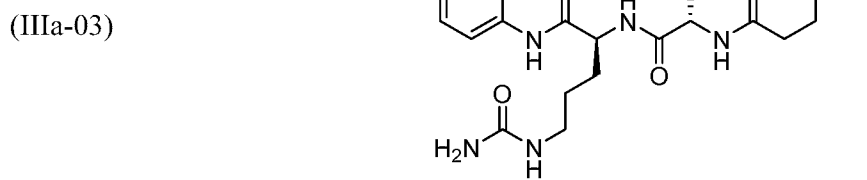
(IIIa-01)

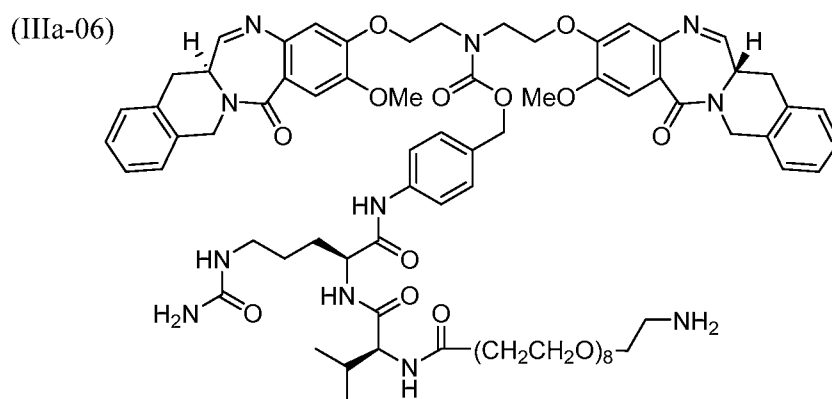
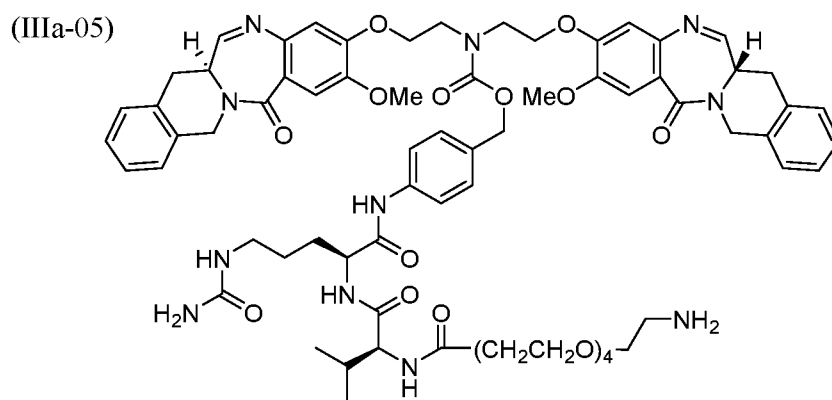
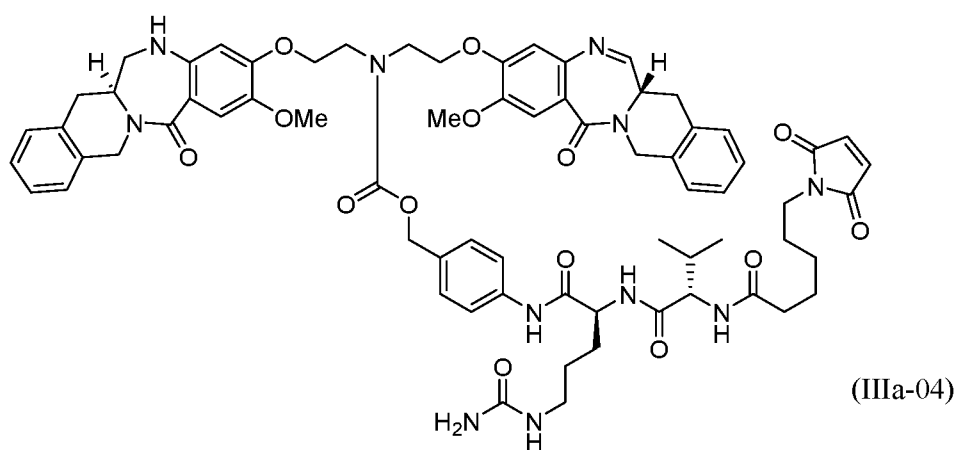


(IIIa-02)

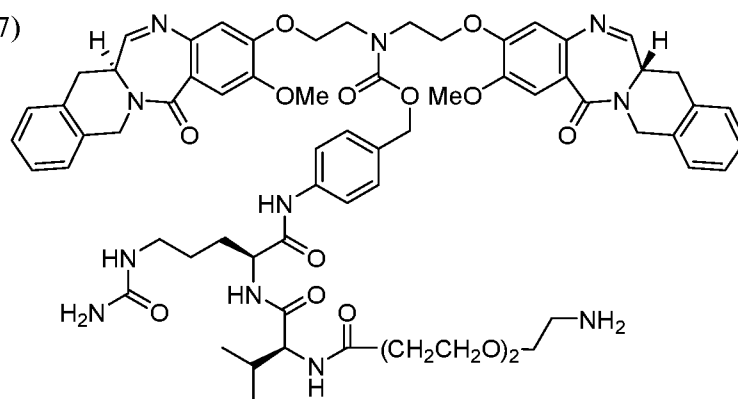


(IIIa-03)



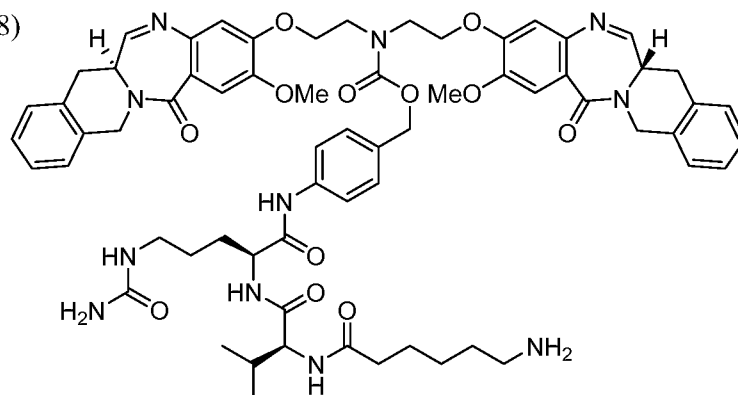


(IIIa-07)



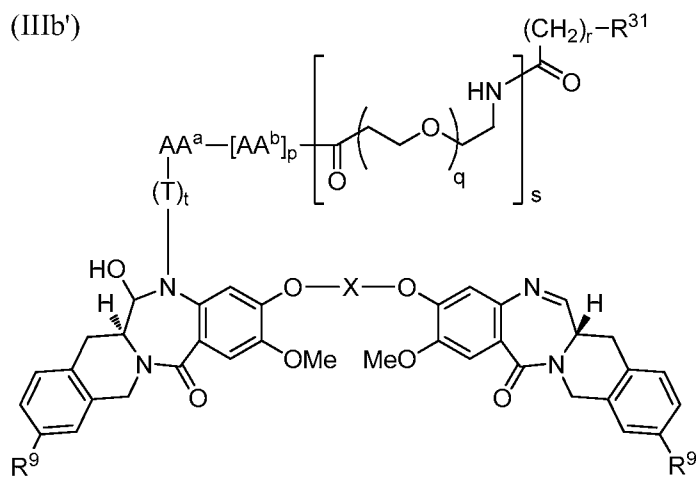
, and

(IIIa-08)



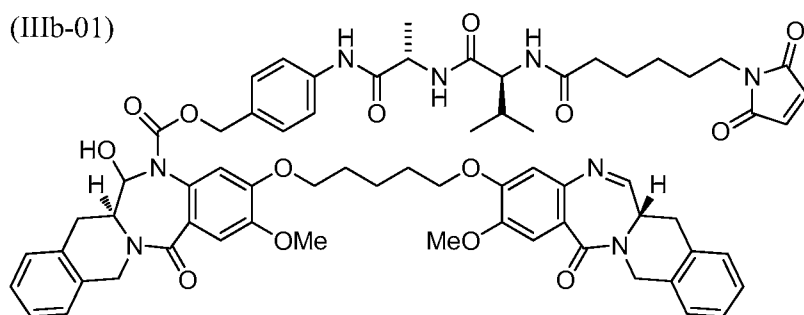
13. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure represented by formula (IIIb')

(IIIb')

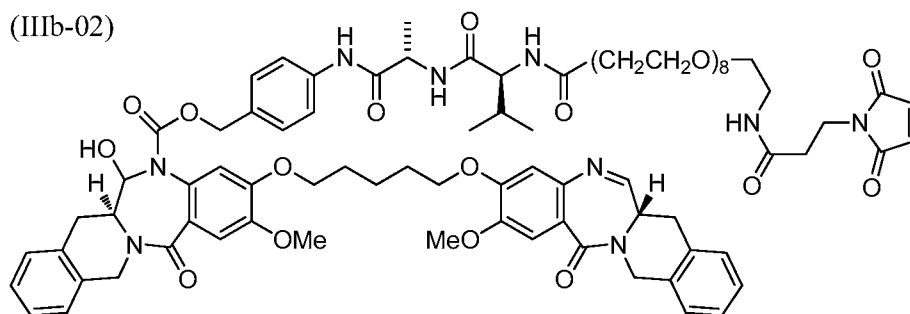


14. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure selected from the group consisting of:

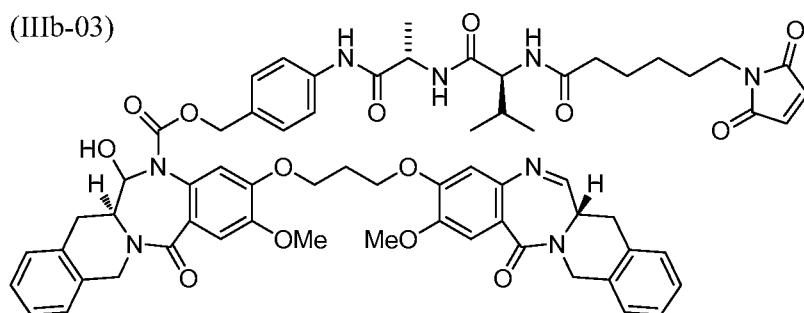
(IIIb-01)



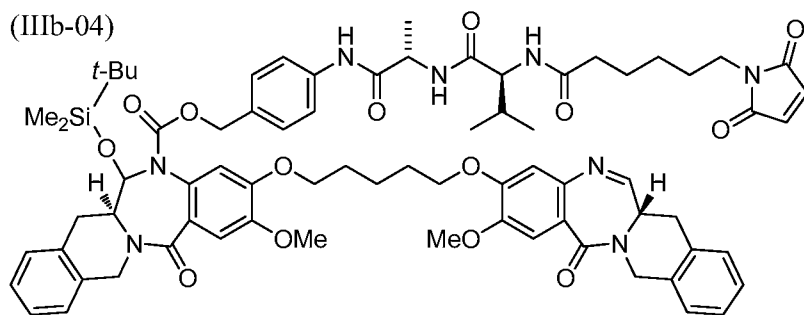
(IIIb-02)



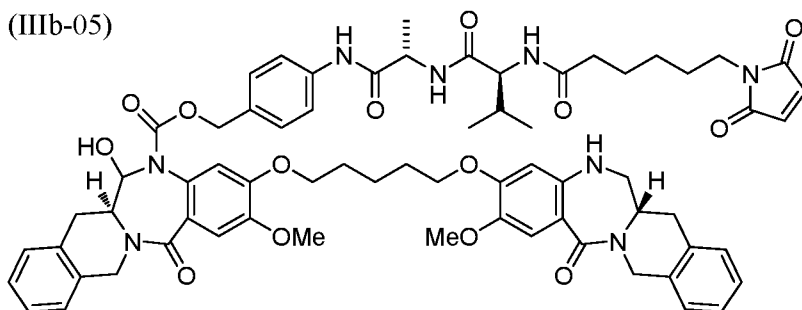
(IIIb-03)



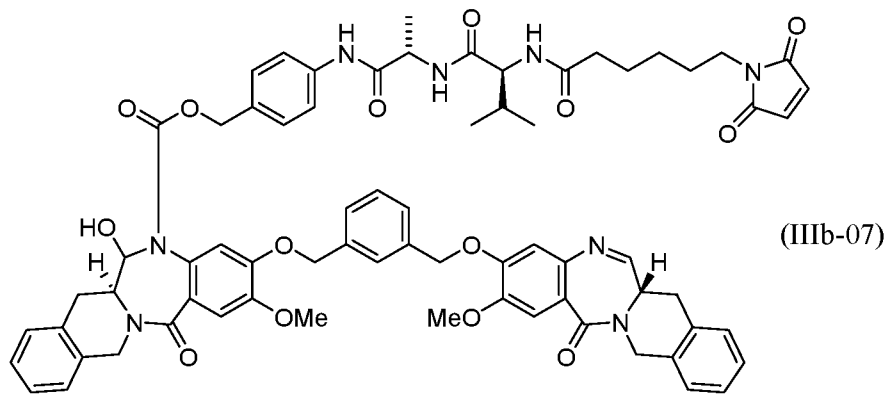
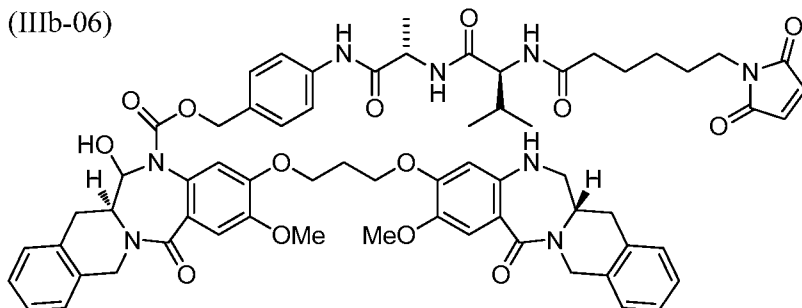
(IIIb-04)



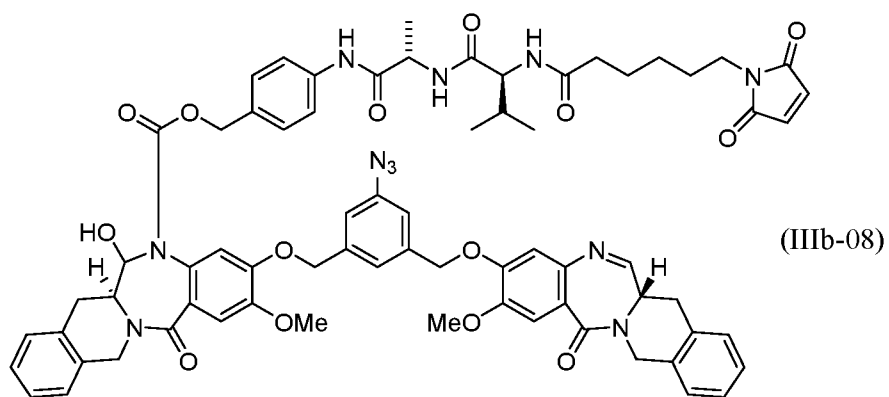
(IIIb-05)



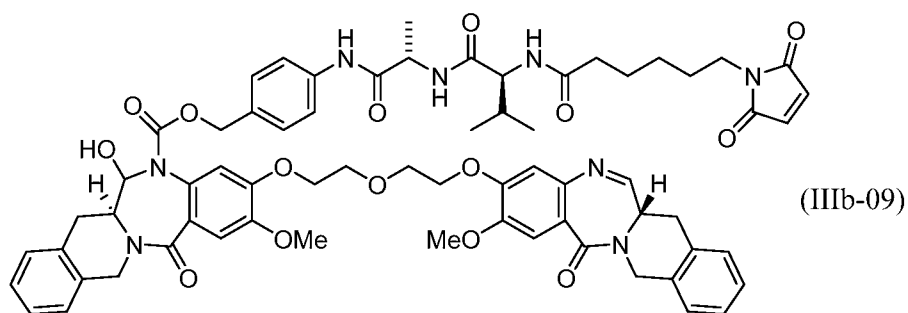
(IIIb-06)



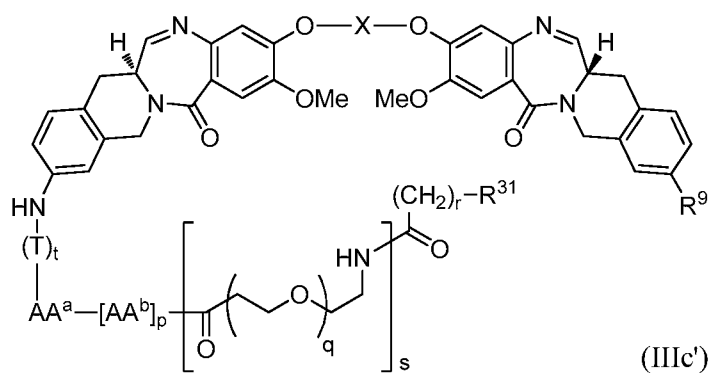
5



, and

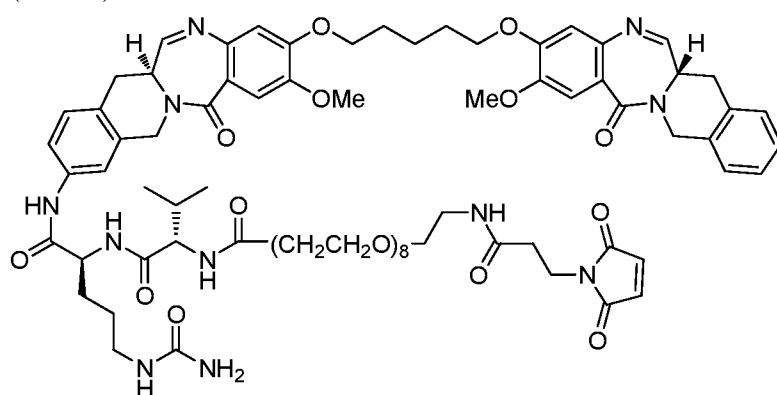


15. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure represented by formula (IIIc')



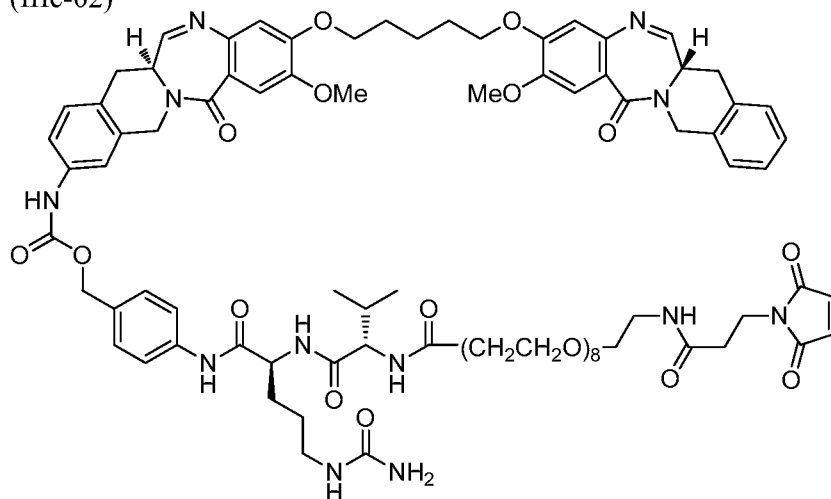
5 16. A benzodiazepine dimer-linker compound according to claim 10, having a structure selected from the group consisting of:

(IIIc-01)

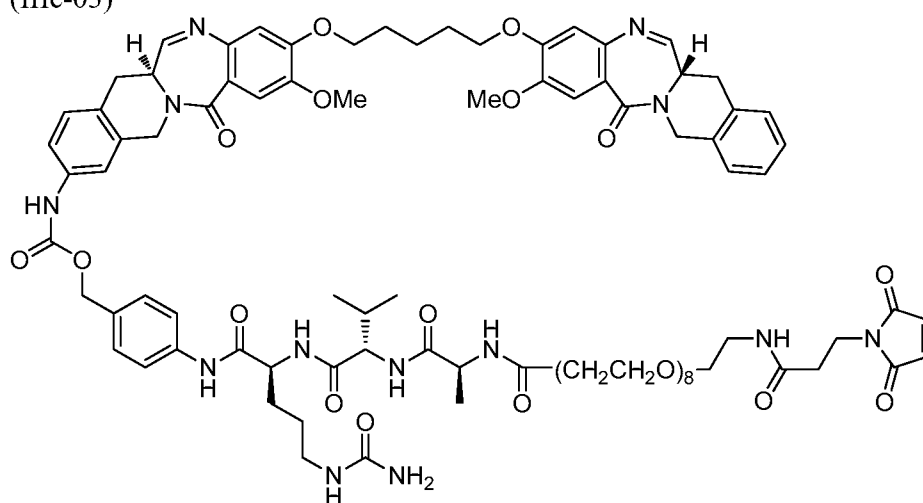




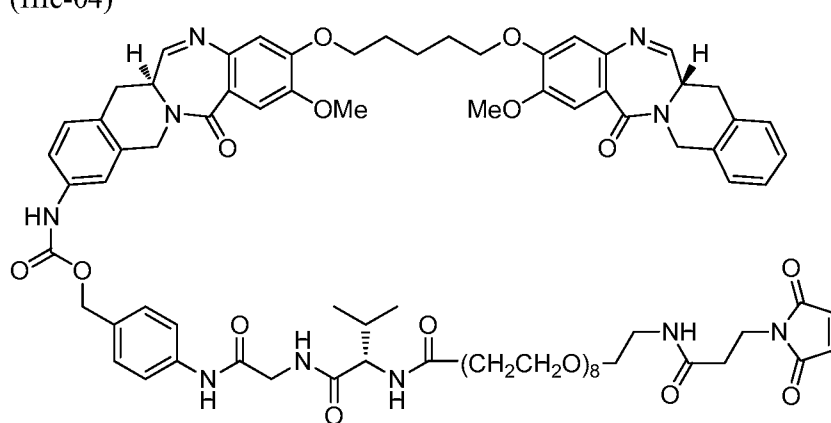
(IIIc-02)



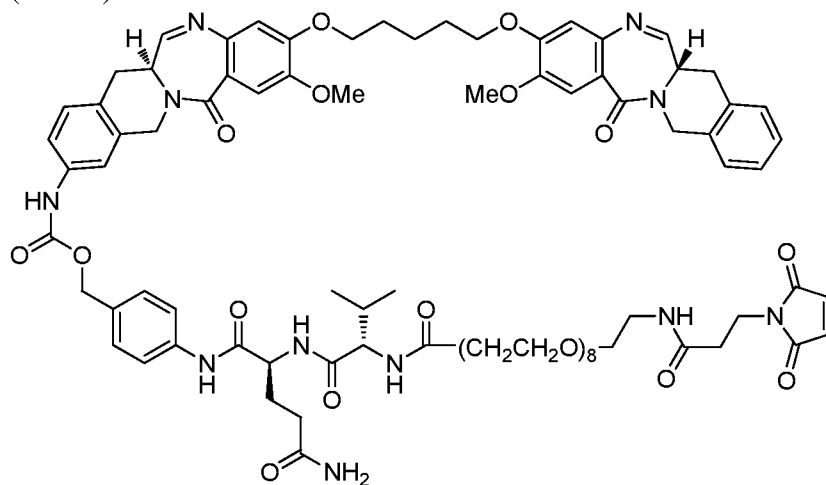
(IIIc-03)



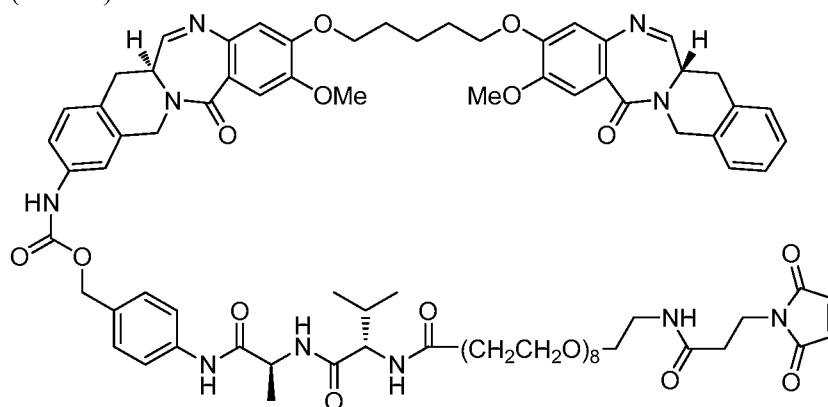
(IIIc-04)



(IIIc-05)

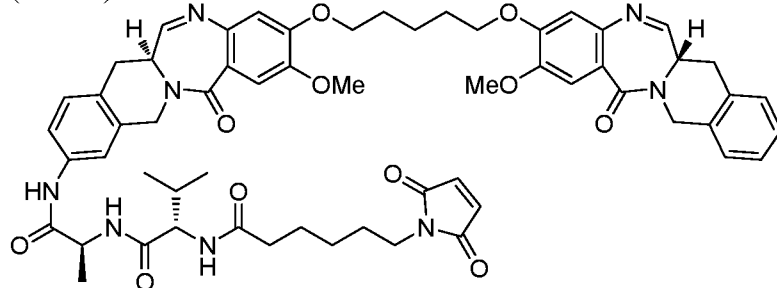


(IIIc-06)



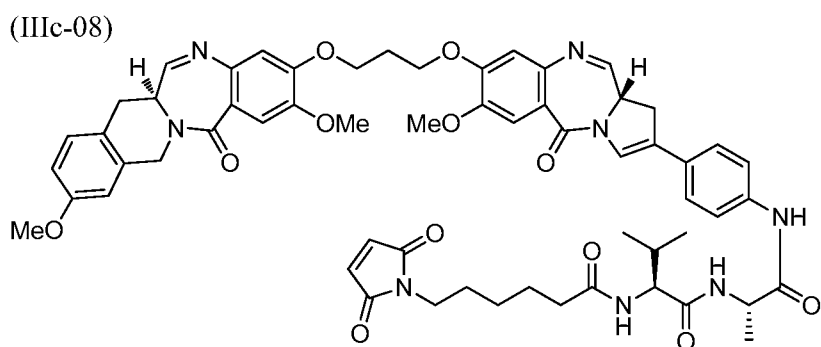
, and

(IIIc-07)



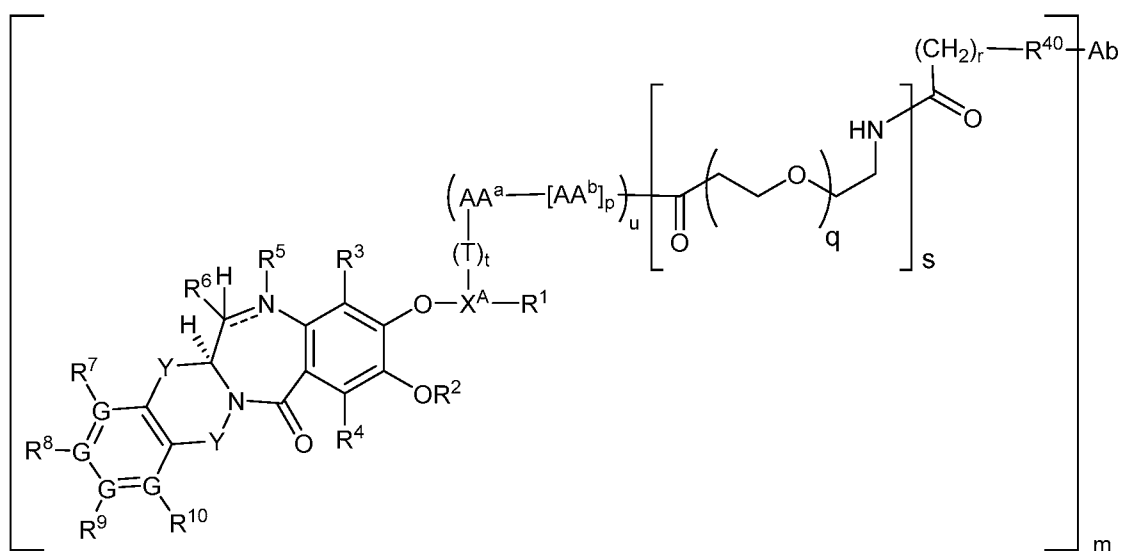
5

**17.** A benzodiazepine dimer-linker according to claim 10, having a structure represented by formula (IIIc-08):

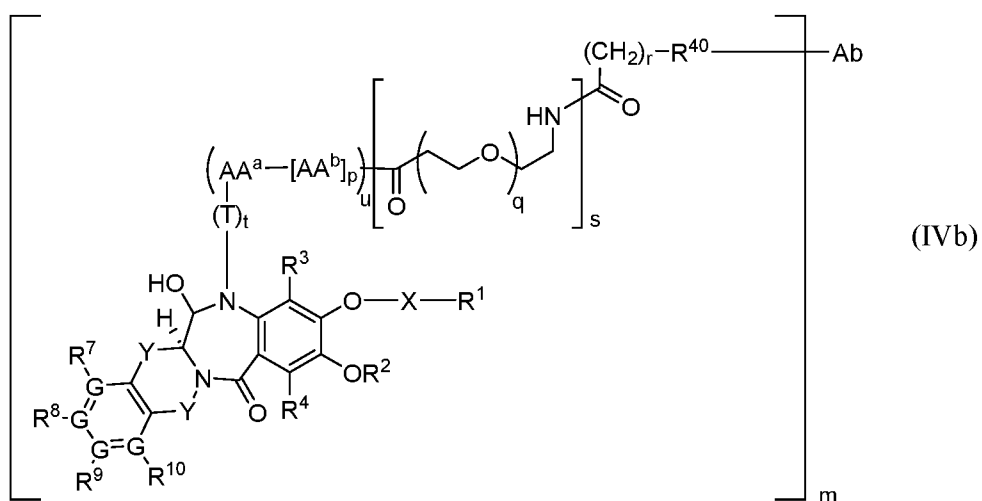


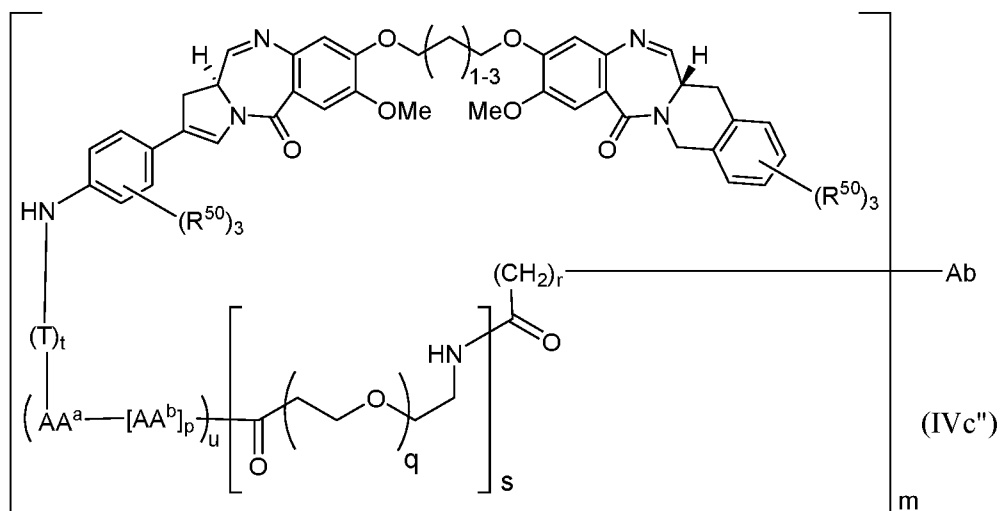
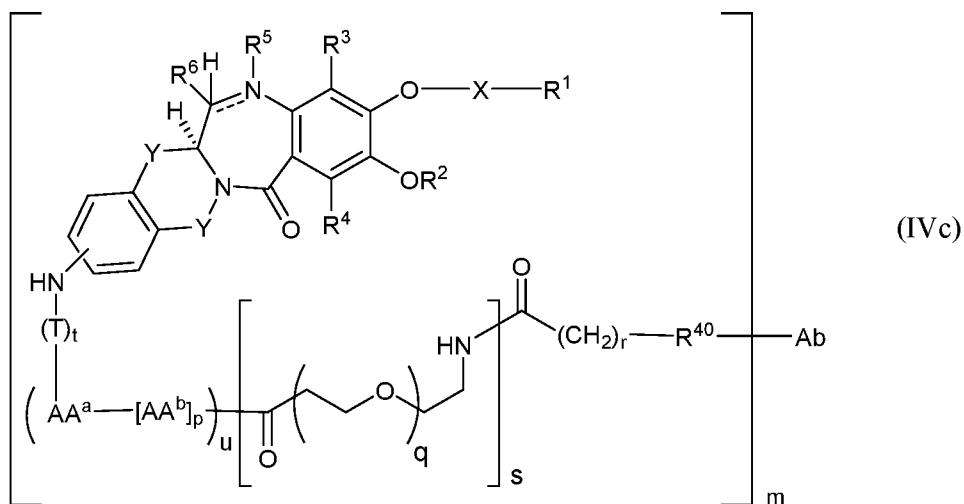
**18.** A conjugate of a benzodiazepine dimer and an antibody, having a structure according to formula (IVa), (IVb), (IVc), or (IVc'')

(IVa)



5





wherein

5 Ab is an antibody;

T is a self-immolating group;

t is 0 or 1;

AA<sup>a</sup> and each AA<sup>b</sup> are independently selected from the group consisting of alanine, β-  
alanine, γ-aminobutyric acid, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, γ-carboxyglutamic  
10 acid, citrulline, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine,  
leucine, lysine, methionine, norleucine, norvaline, ornithine, phenylalanine, proline,  
serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine;

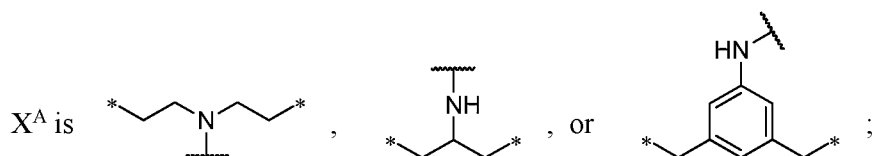
u is 0 or 1;

p is 1, 2, 3, or 4;


15 q is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, or 12;

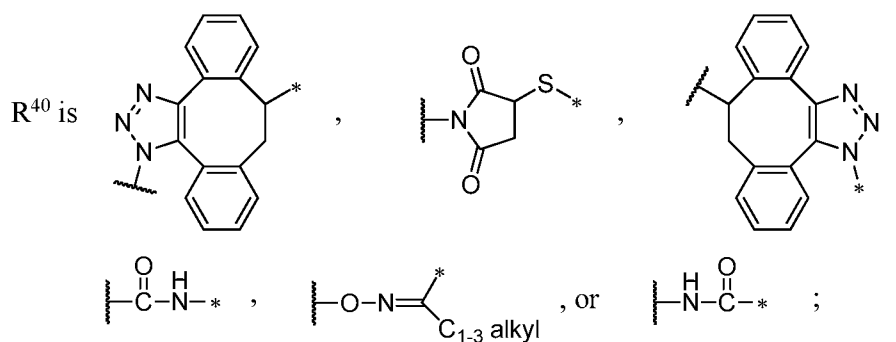
r is 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5;

s is 0 or 1;




wherein the asterisks (\*) indicate the positions of bonding of  $X^A$  to the adjacent O's

5 and the wavy line  indicates the position of bonding of  $X^A$  to T if T is present or to AA<sup>a</sup> if T is absent

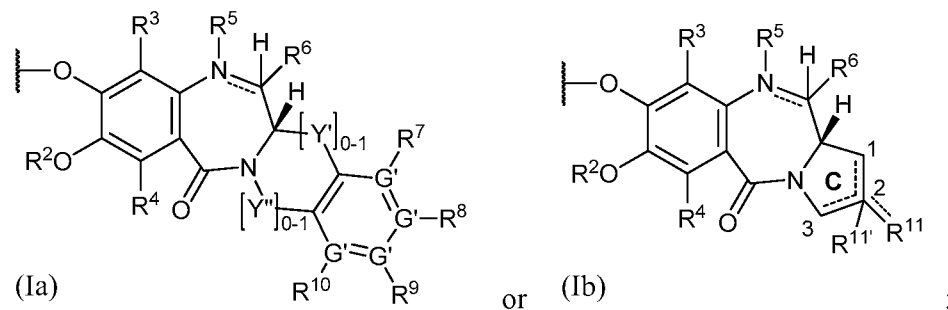


where the open valence of  $R^{40}$  that is bonded to Ab is denoted by an asterisk (\*) and

10 the open valence of  $R^{40}$  that is bonded to  $(CH_2)_r$  is denoted by a wavy line ();

m is 1, 2, 3, or 4;


$R^1$  is according to formula (Ia) or formula (Ib):



each G and G' is C or N, with the proviso that no more than two Gs or two G's are N;

15 each  $R^2$  is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl;

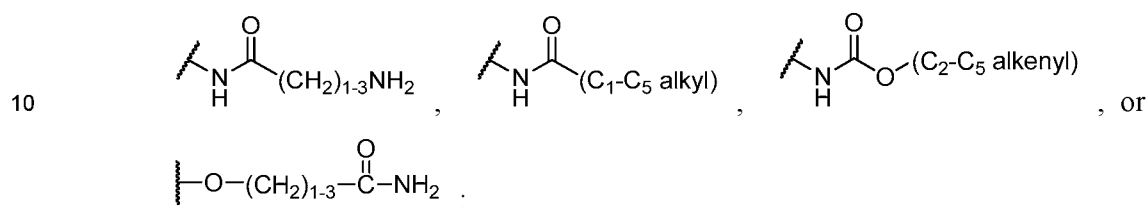
each  $R^3$  and  $R^4$  is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), cyano, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, or NO<sub>2</sub>;

each double line  in a diazepine ring system independently represents a single bond or a double bond;

each R<sup>5</sup> is H if the double line  $\equiv$  to the N to which it is attached is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

each R<sup>6</sup> is H, OH, SO<sub>3</sub>Na, or SO<sub>3</sub>K if the double line  $\equiv$  to the C to which it is attached is a single bond and is absent if the double line is a double bond;

- 5 each R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and R<sup>10</sup> is independently H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, C $\equiv$ C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>,



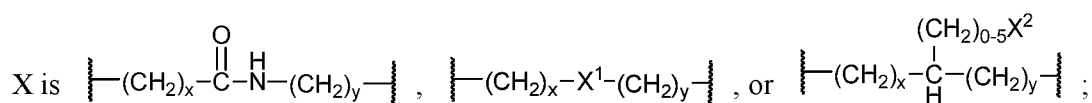
or where a R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is attached to a G or G' that is N, such R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, or R<sup>10</sup> is absent;

- the dotted lines in ring C of formula (Ib) indicate the optional presence of a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond;

- 15 R<sup>11</sup> is H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, =CH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), CH=CH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, C $\equiv$ C(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl, OH, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl), cyano, NO<sub>2</sub>, F, Cl, Br, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 4- to 7-membered aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 5- to 6-membered aryl or heteroaryl unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>;

R<sup>11'</sup> is absent if a C1-C2, C2-C3, or C2-R<sup>11</sup> double bond is present and otherwise is H;

- each R<sup>50</sup> is independently H, O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkylene), O(C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkynyl), F, Cl, Br, or CN;



X<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, NH, S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, 3- to 7-membered cycloalkylene or heterocycloalkylene unsubstituted or substituted with (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup> or O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2-5</sub>X<sup>2</sup>, 6-membered arylene

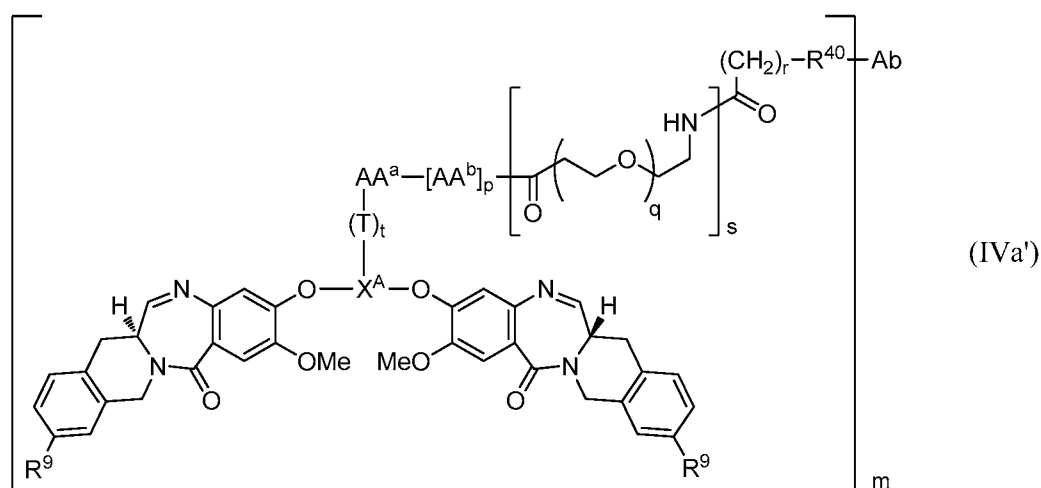
unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ , or 5-membered heteroarylene unsubstituted or substituted with  $(\text{CH}_2)_{0-5}\text{X}^2$  or  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-5}\text{X}^2$ ; each  $\text{X}^2$  is independently H, F, Cl, Br, OH,  $\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $\text{O}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkylene})$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ,  $\text{N}_3$ ,  $\text{CO}_2(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NH}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_5 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $\text{N}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_5 \text{ alkyl})_2$ , SH, CHO,  $\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2)_2\text{N}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $\text{NHNH}_2$ , or  $\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NHNH}_2$ ;

x and y are independently 1, 2, or 3;

each Y is independently  $\text{CH}_2$ ,  $\text{C}=\text{O}$ , or  $\text{CHR}^{12}$ ; wherein each  $\text{R}^{12}$  is independently F, Cl, Br, or  $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkyl}$ ; and

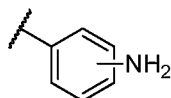
$\text{Y}'$  and  $\text{Y}''$  are independently  $\text{CH}_2$ ,  $\text{C}=\text{O}$ , or  $\text{CHR}^{12}$ ; wherein each  $\text{R}^{12}$  is independently F, Cl, Br, or  $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3 \text{ alkyl}$ , with the proviso that at least one of  $\text{Y}'$  and  $\text{Y}''$  is present.

**19.** A conjugate according to claim 18, having a structure represented by formula (IVa')

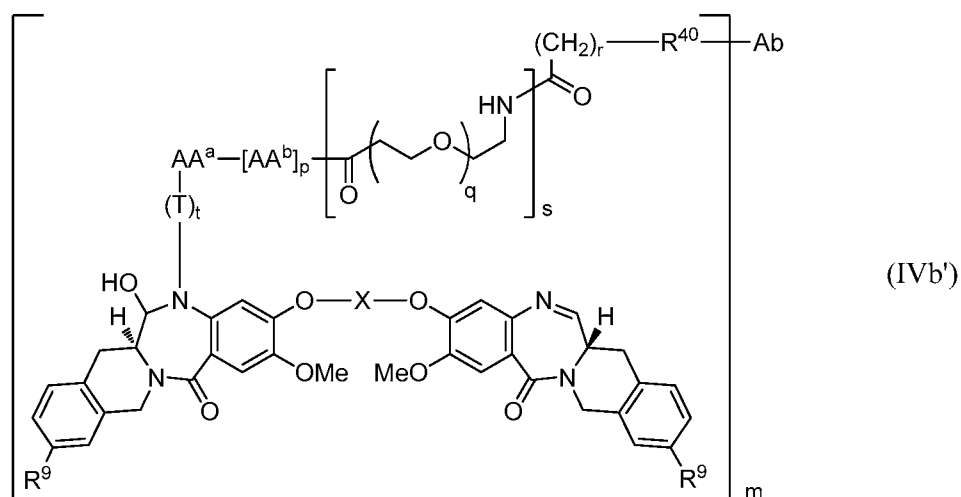


wherein

each  $\text{R}^9$  is independently H, OH, OMe,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NMe}_2$ ,  $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_{1-8}\text{Me}$ ,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , or

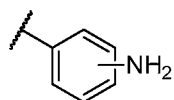


**20.** A conjugate according to claim 18, having a structure represented by formula (IVb'):

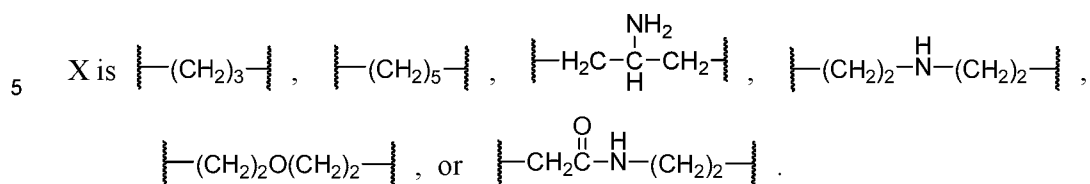


wherein

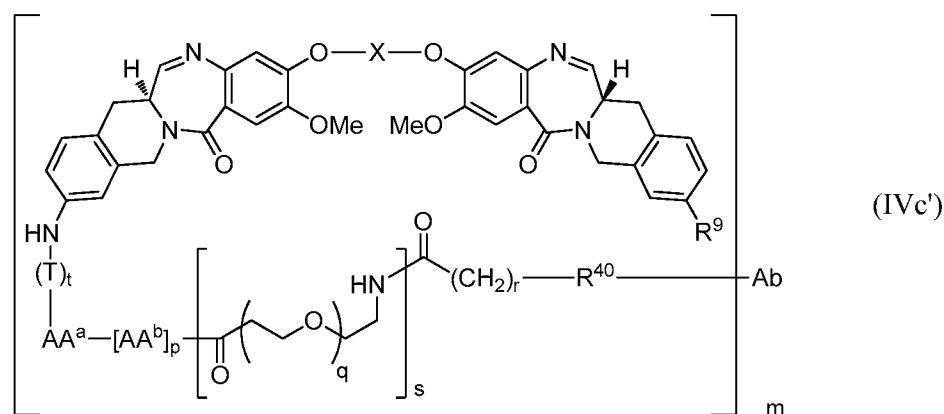
R<sup>9</sup> is H, OH, OMe, NH<sub>2</sub>, NMe<sub>2</sub>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>Me, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, or



; and

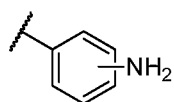


**21.** A conjugate according to claim 18, having a structure represented by formula (IVc'):



wherein

10 R<sup>9</sup> is H, OH, OMe, NH<sub>2</sub>, NMe<sub>2</sub>, O(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>1-8</sub>Me, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, or



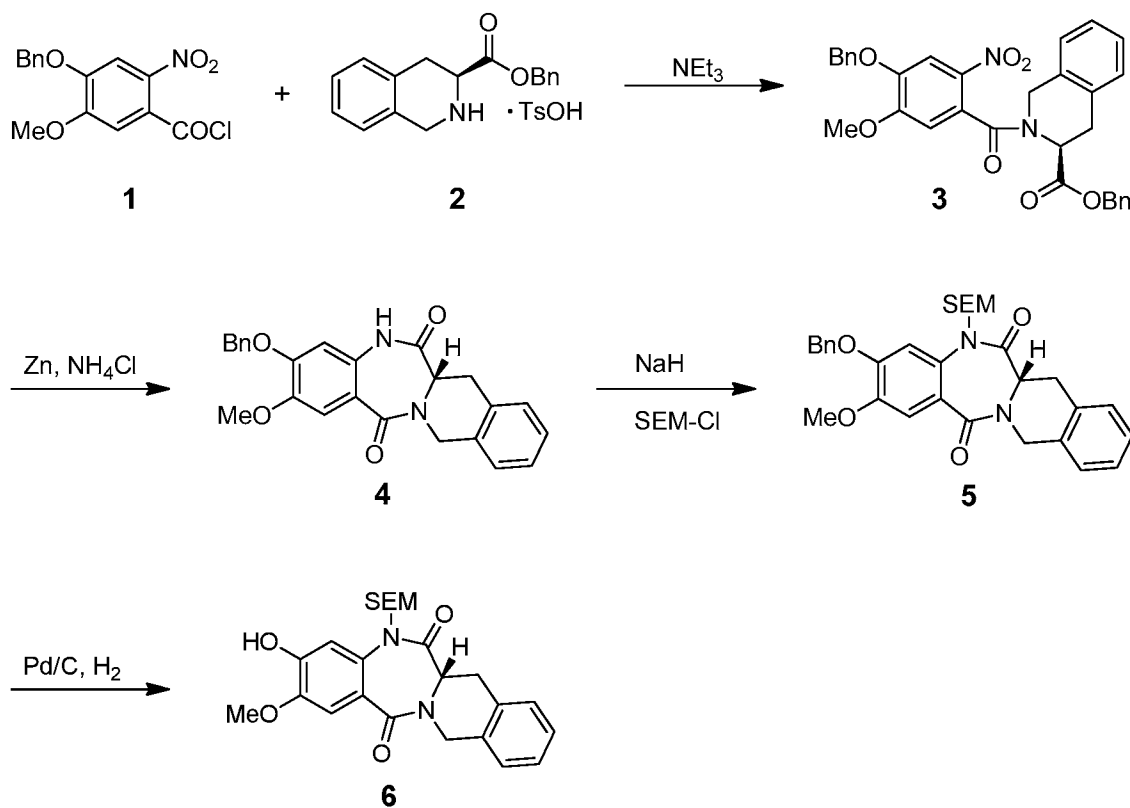
; and

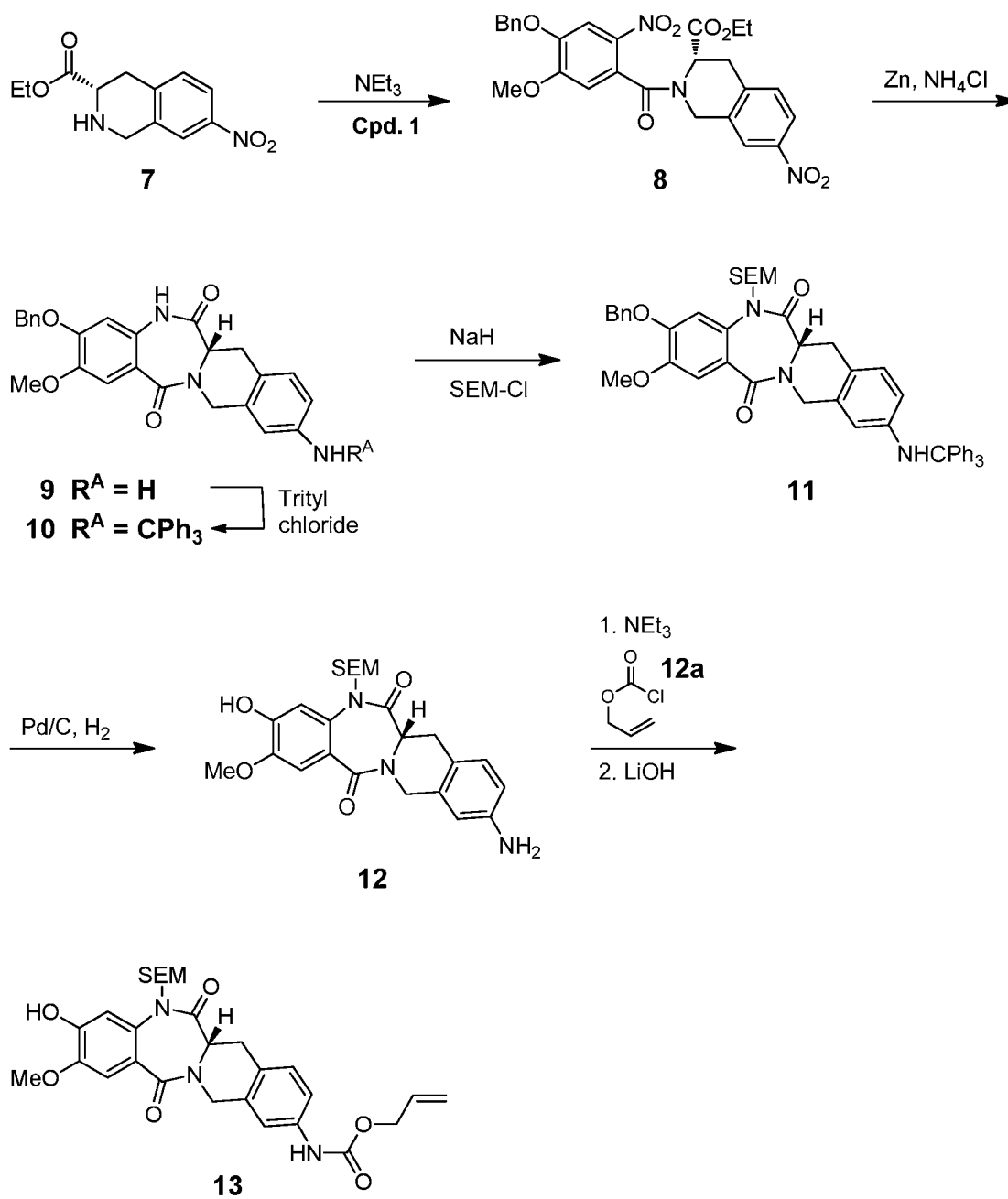


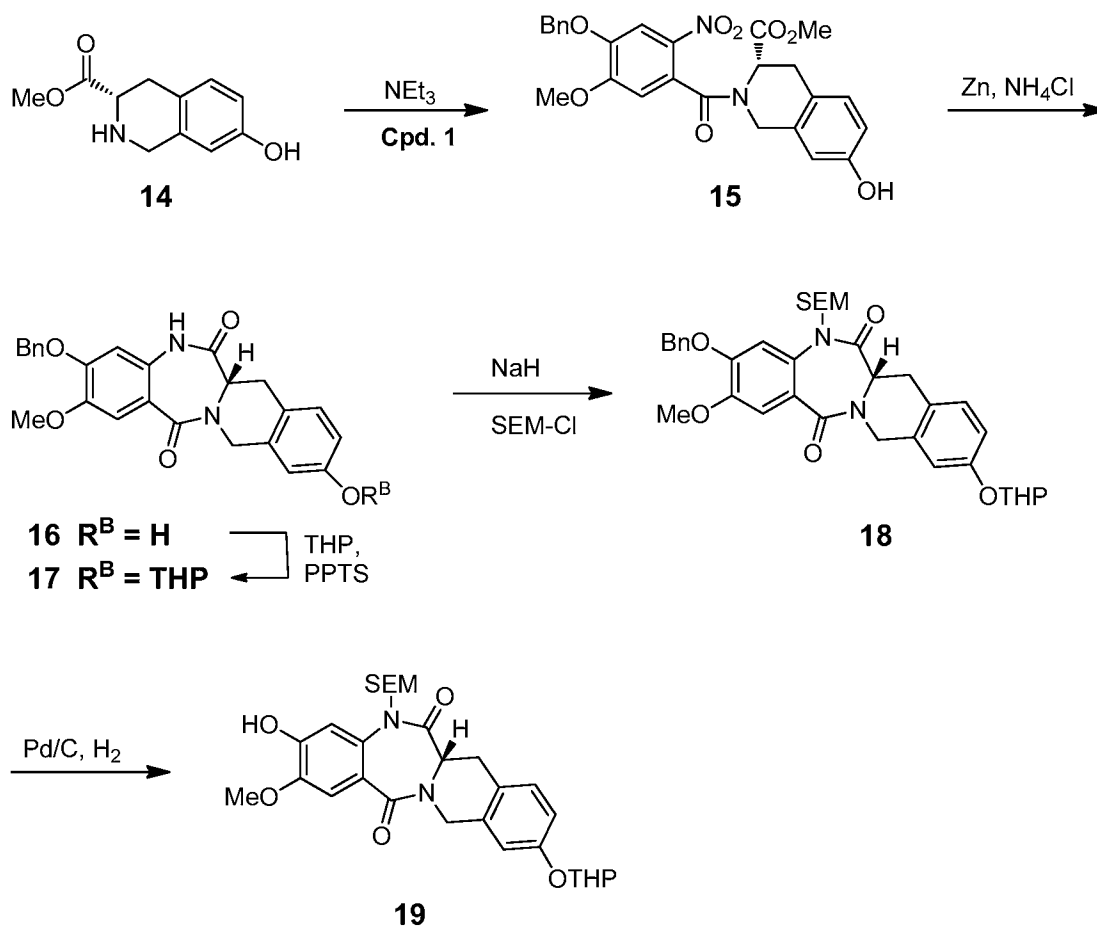
X is  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{---}$  ,  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{---}$  ,  $\text{---}\text{H}_2\text{C}-\overset{\text{NH}_2}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}-\text{CH}_2\text{---}$  ,  $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_2-\overset{\text{H}}{\text{N}}-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$  ,  
 $\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$  , or  $\text{---}\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{O}}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}-\text{N}-(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{---}$  .

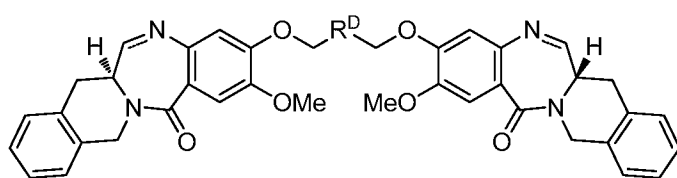
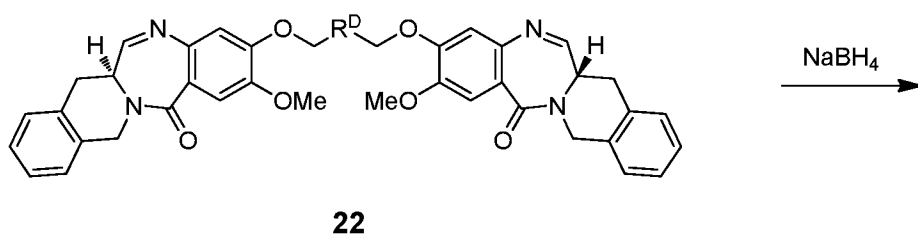
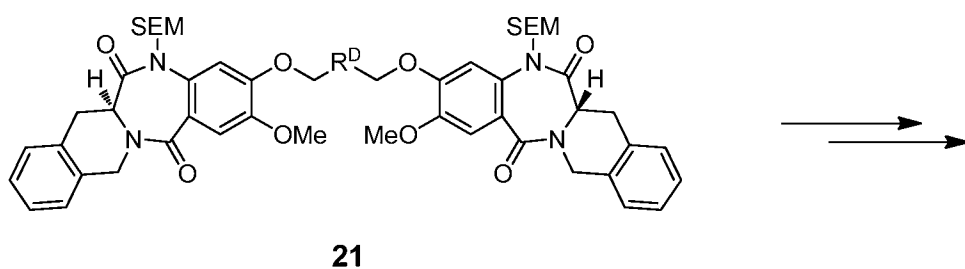
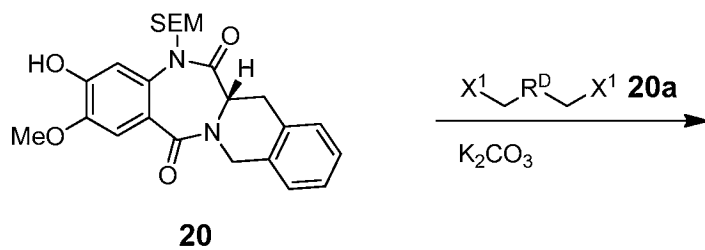
- 22.** A conjugate according to claim 18, wherein the antibody is an anti-mesothelin, anti-glypican-3, anti-CD70, or anti-fucosyl GM1 antibody.
- 5 **23.** A pharmaceutical formulation comprising a conjugate according to claim 18 and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.
- 24.** A method of treating a cancer in a subject suffering from such cancer, comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a conjugate according to claim 18.
- 10 **25.** A method according to claim 24, wherein the cancer is lung, ovarian, gastric, renal, or liver cancer.

\*\*\*\*\*

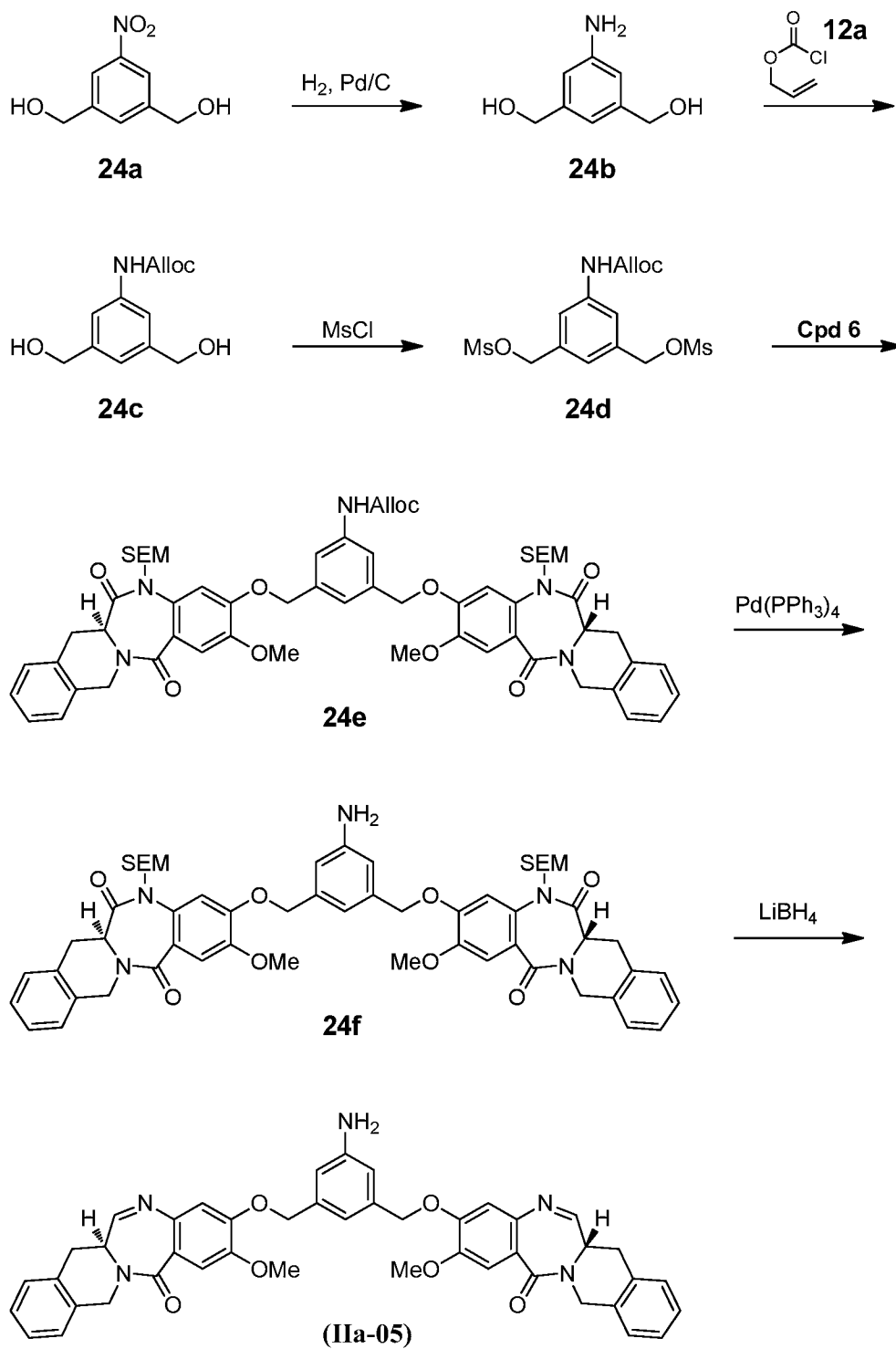
**Fig. 1**

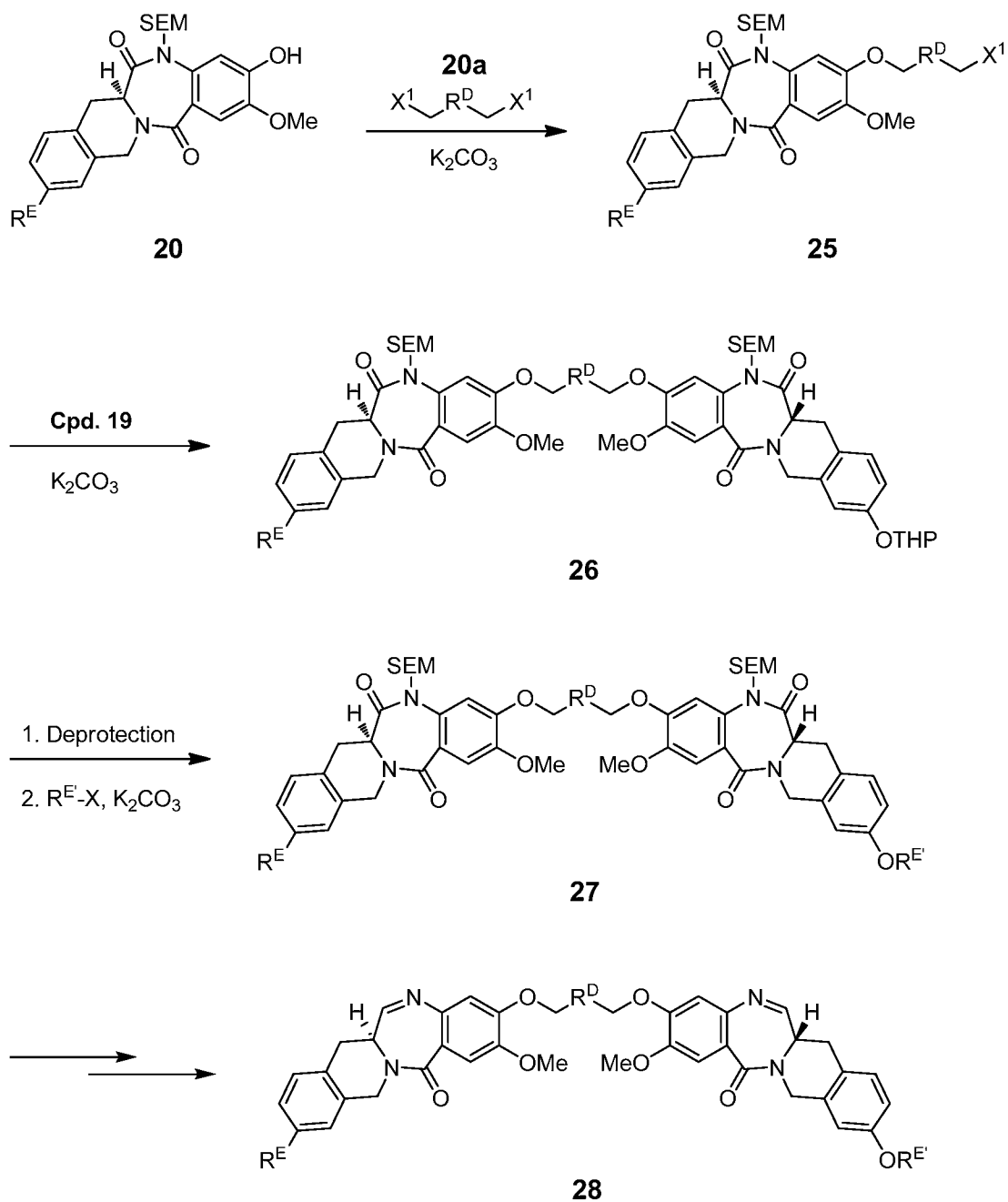
**Fig. 2**

**Fig. 3**

**Fig. 4a**

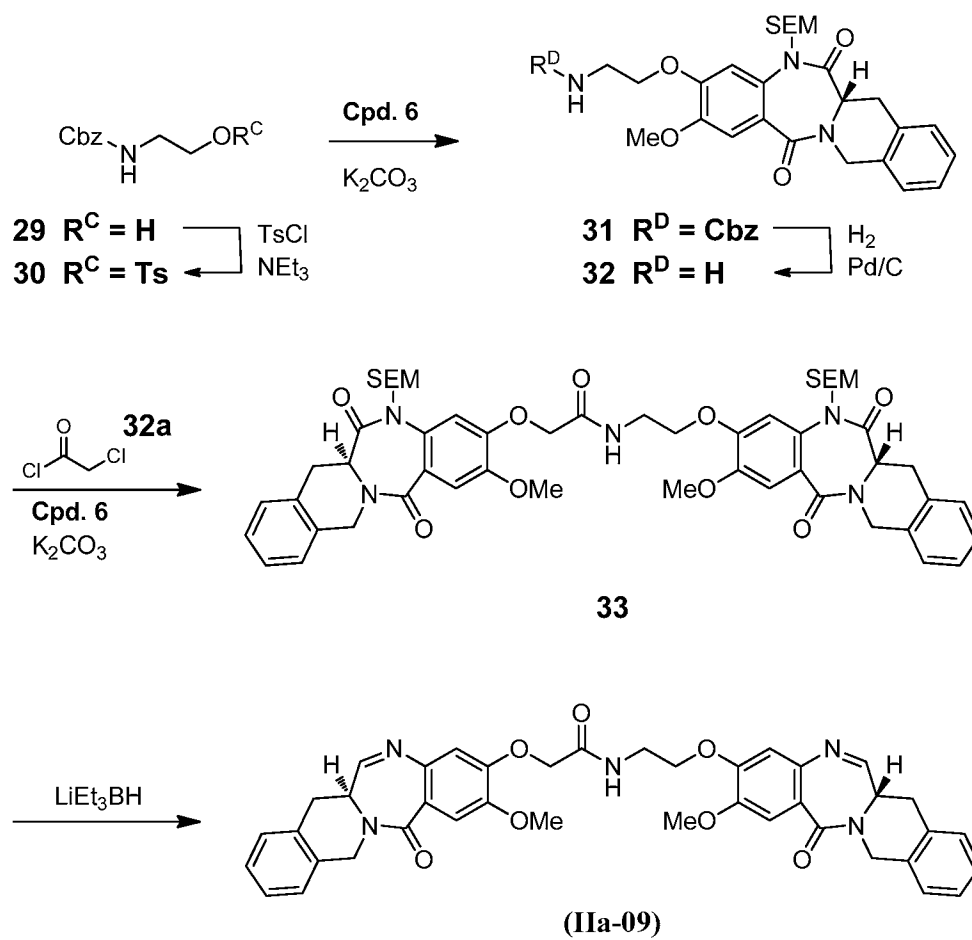
**23: one imine bond reduced**  
**24: both imine bonds reduced**

**Fig. 4b**

**Fig. 5**

$R^E, R^{E'}$  = various groups

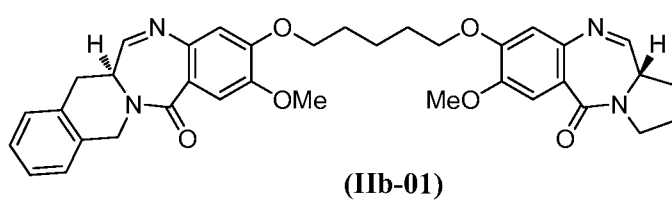
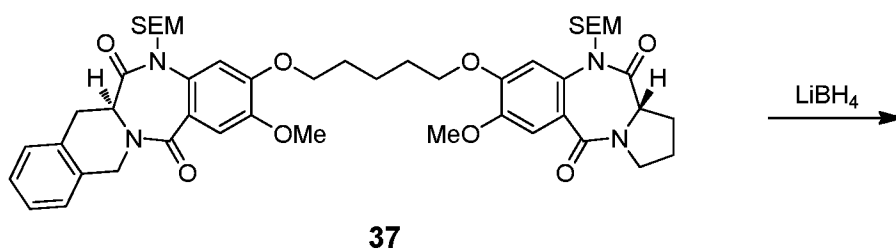
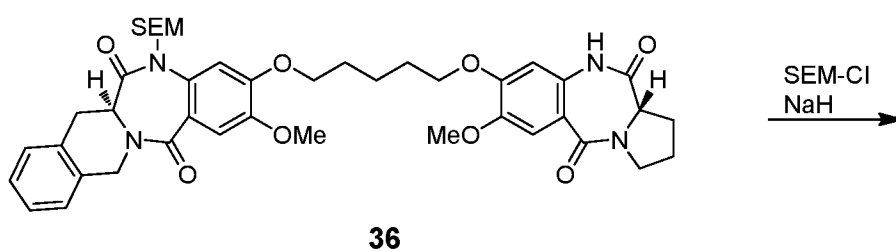
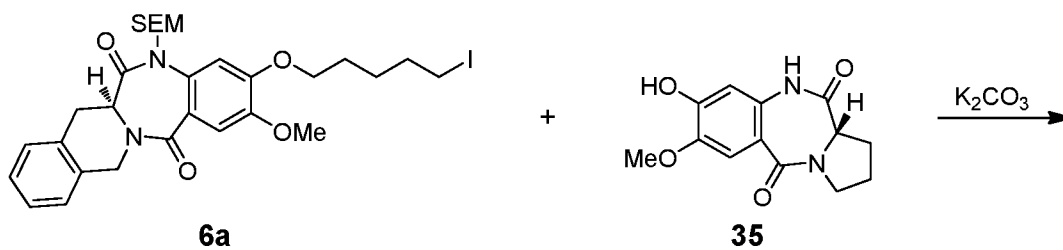
7/26

**Fig. 6**

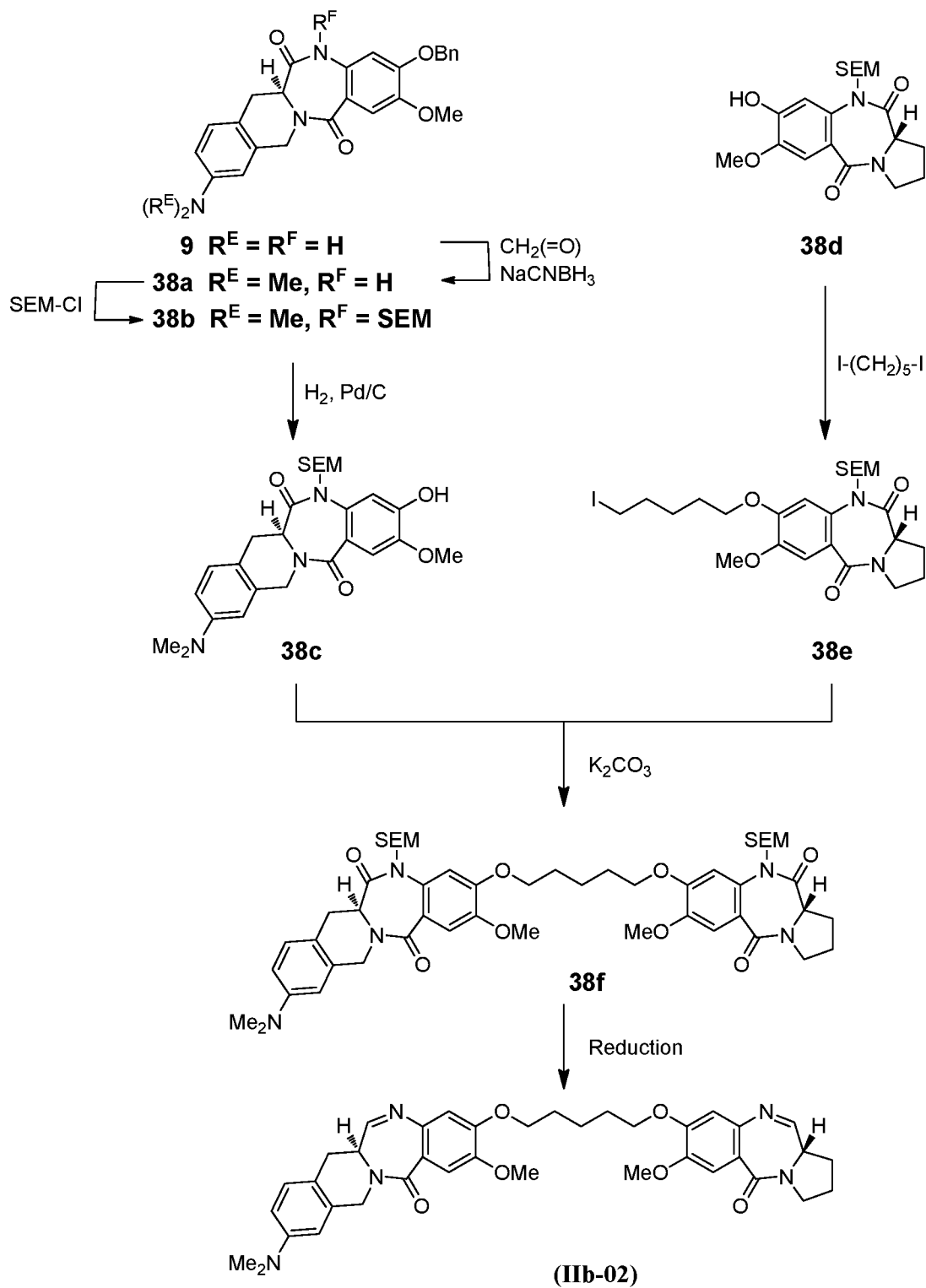


8/26

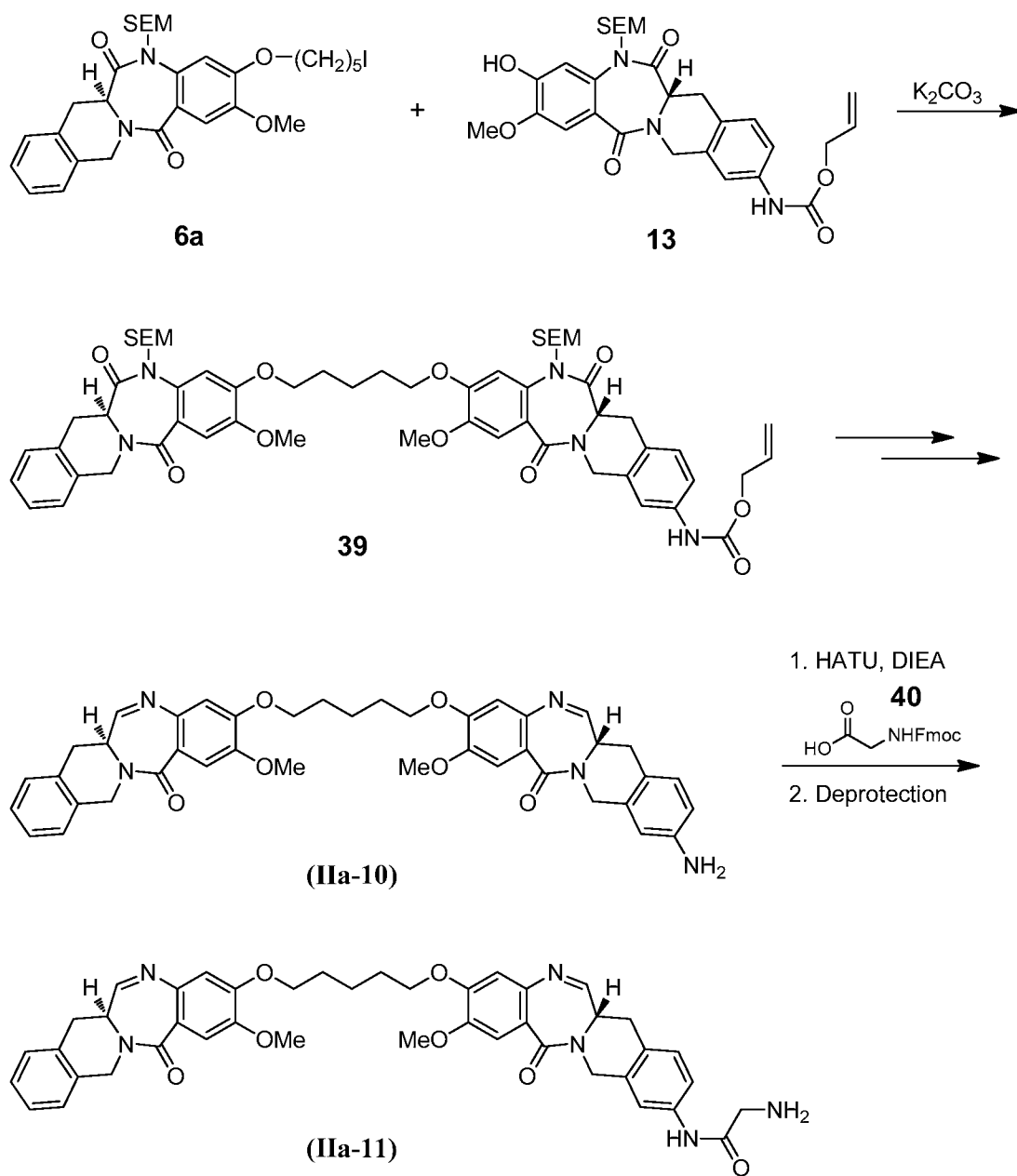
**Fig. 7a**



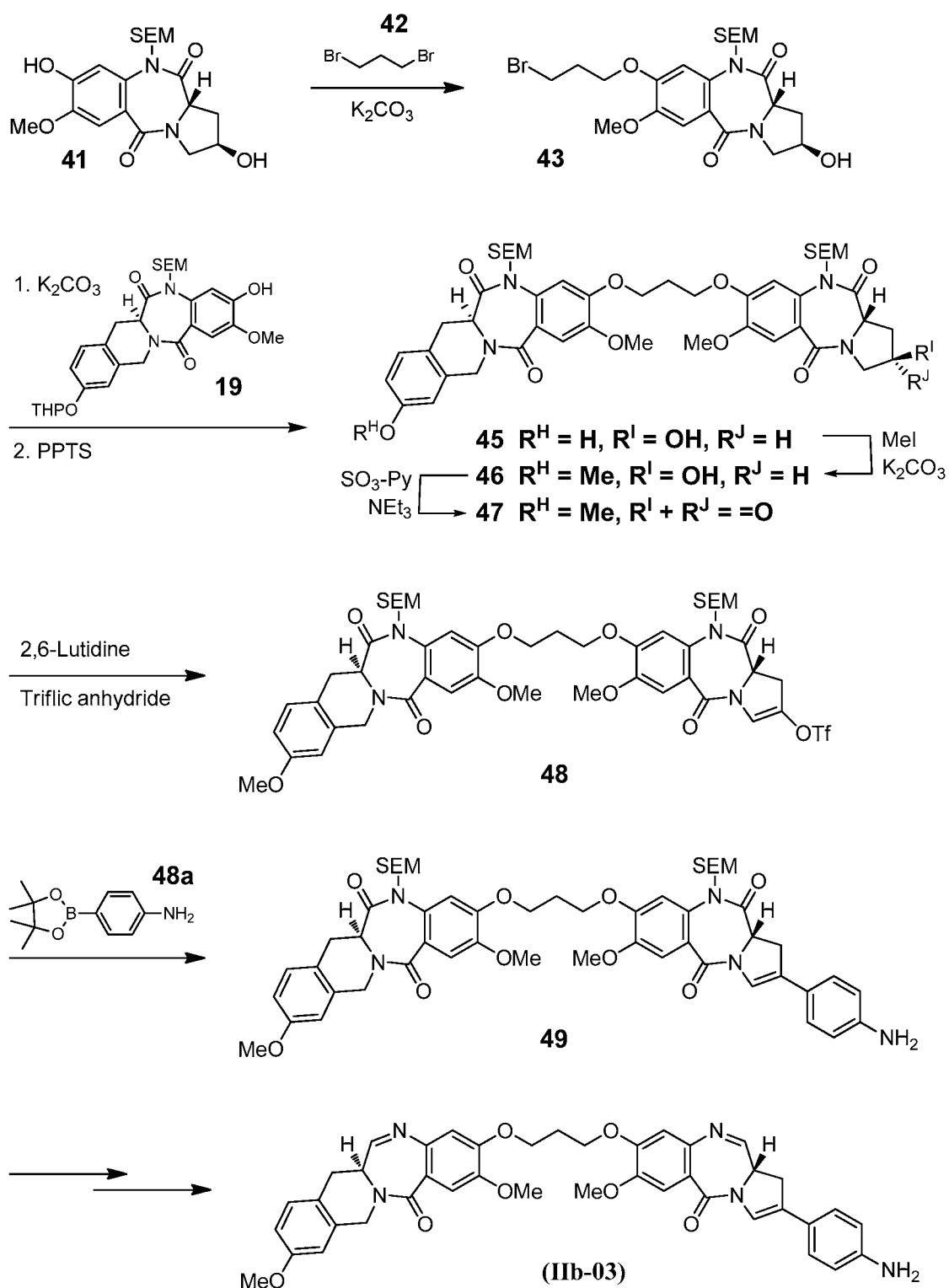
9/26

**Fig. 7b**

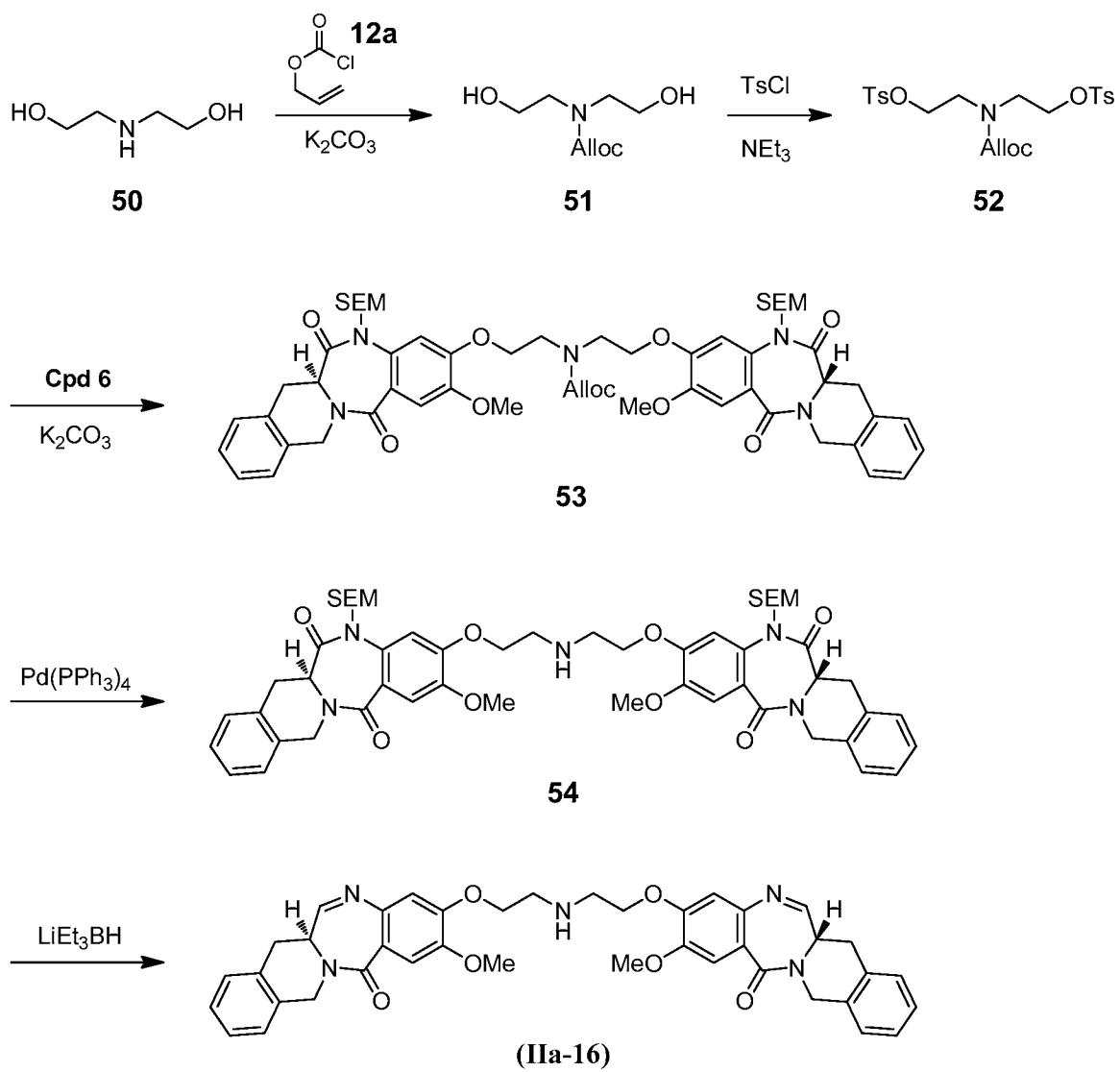
10/26

**Fig. 8**

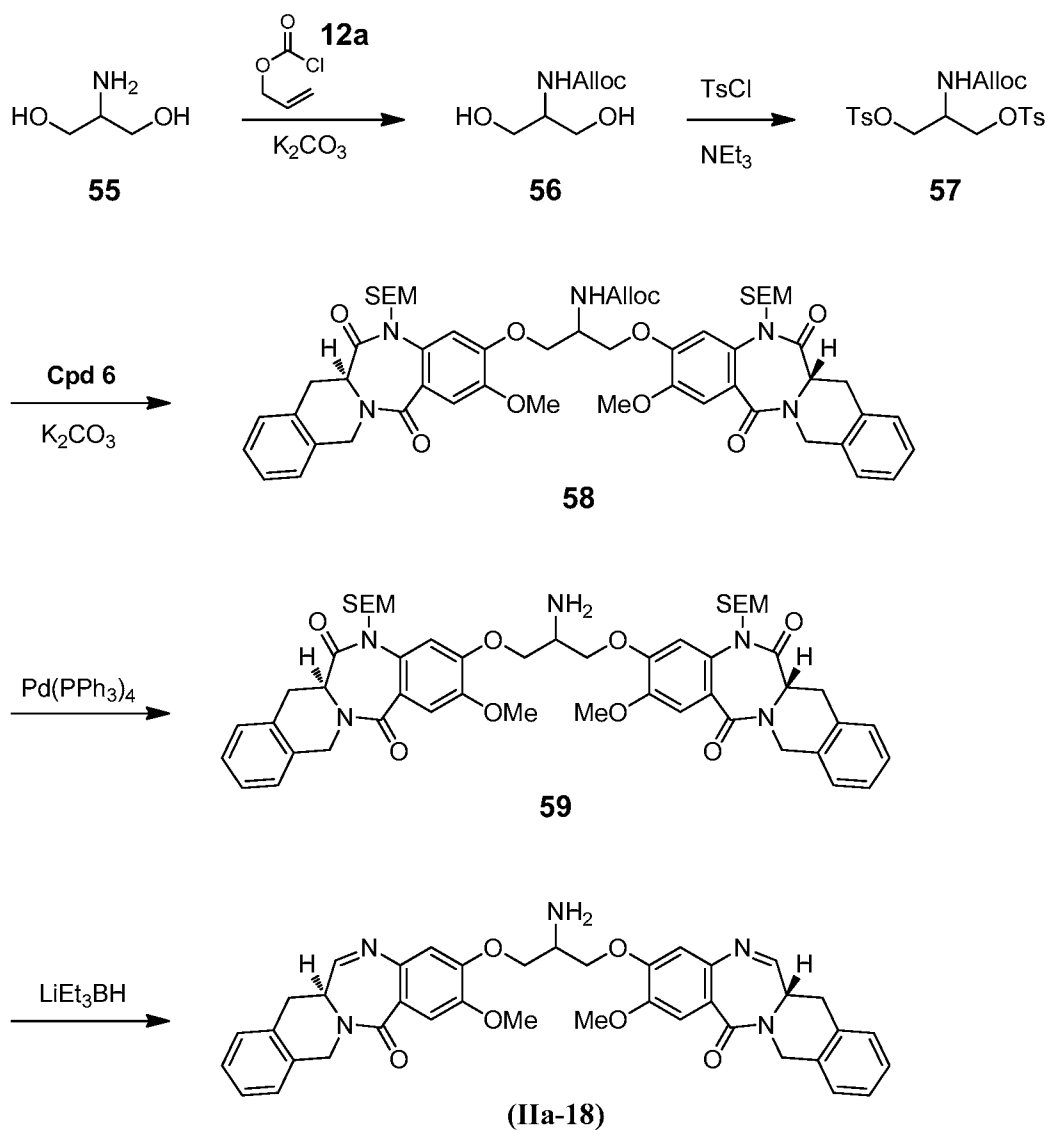
11/26

**Fig. 9**

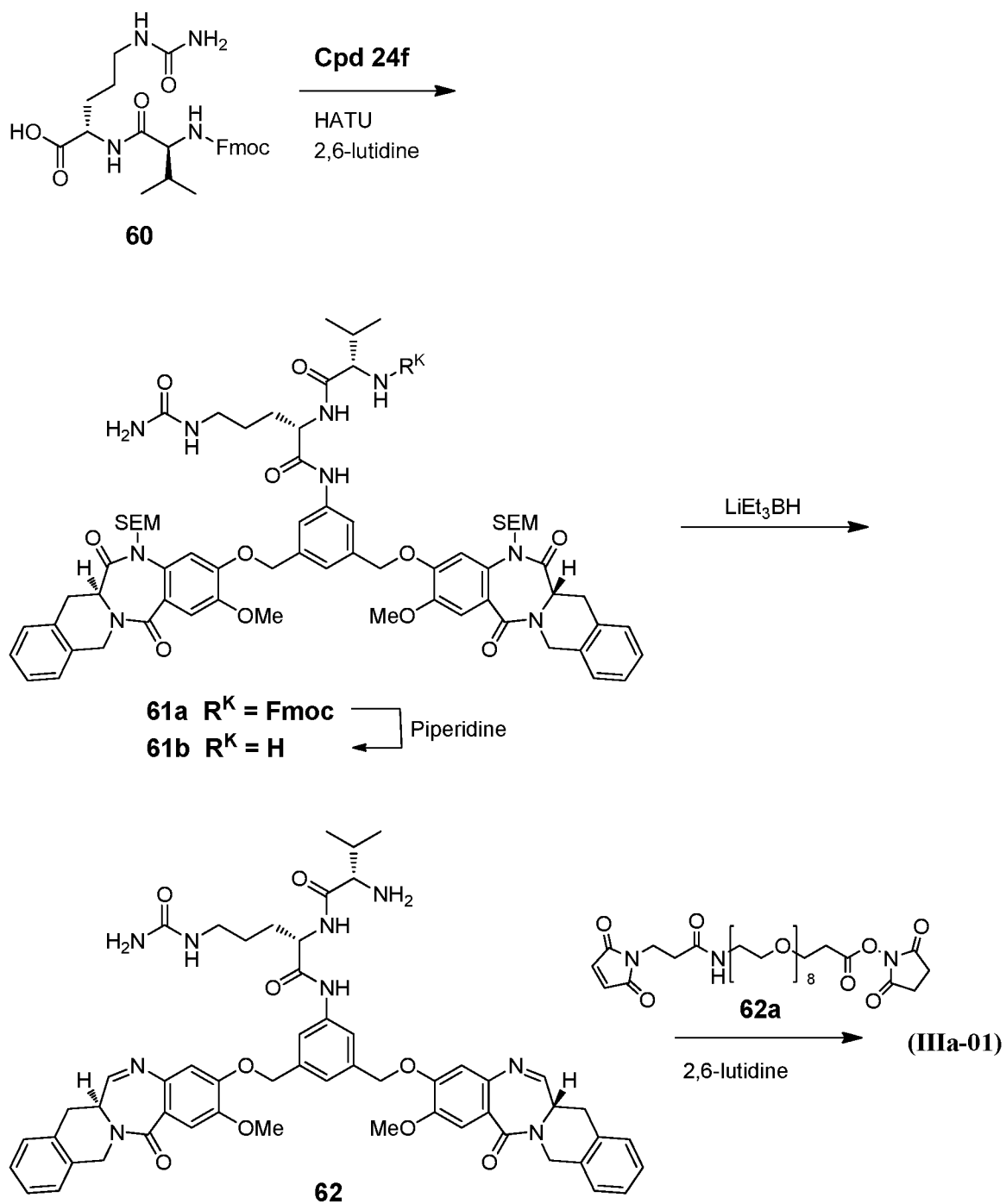
12/26

**Fig. 10**

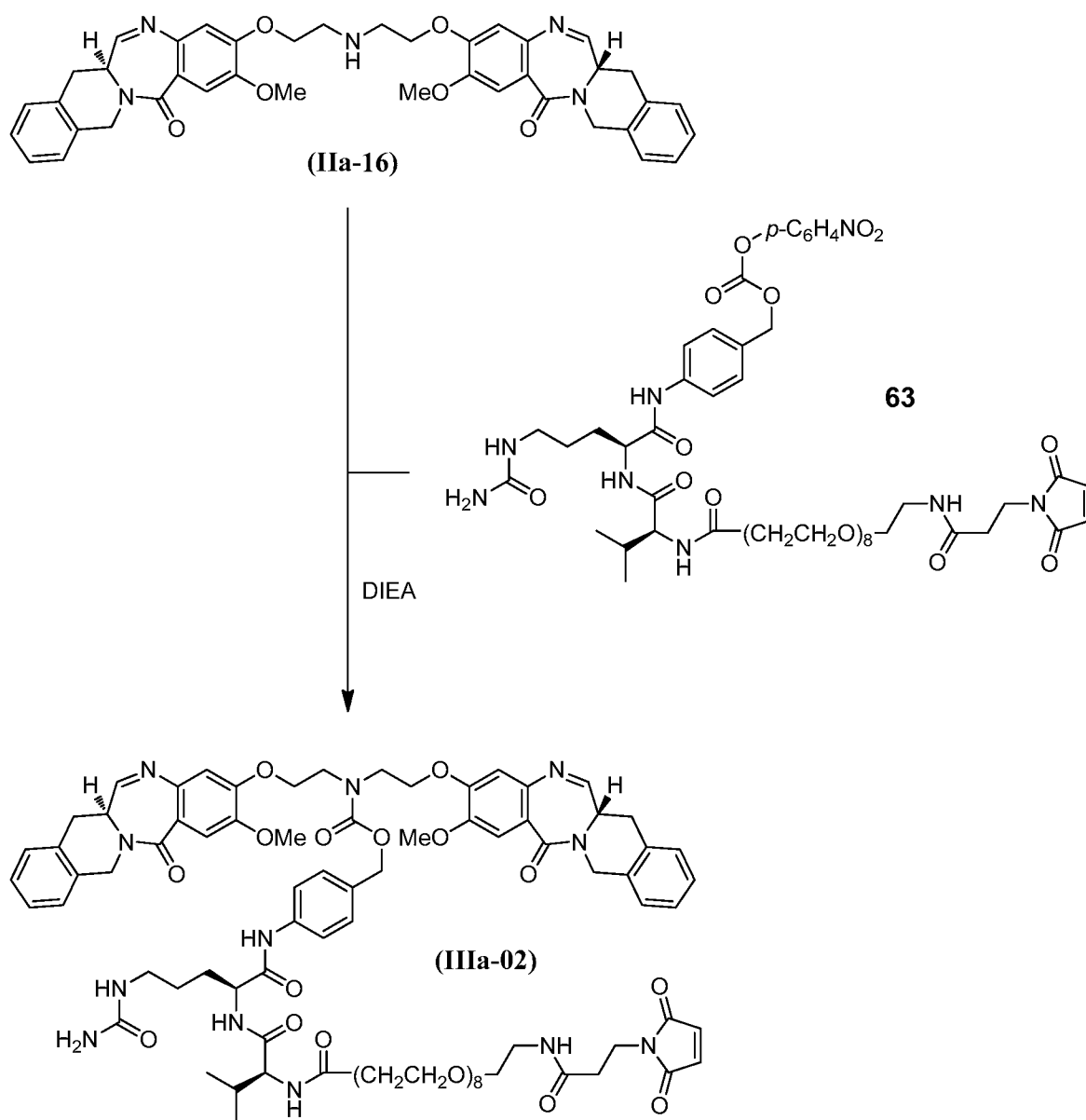
13/26

**Fig. 11**

14/26

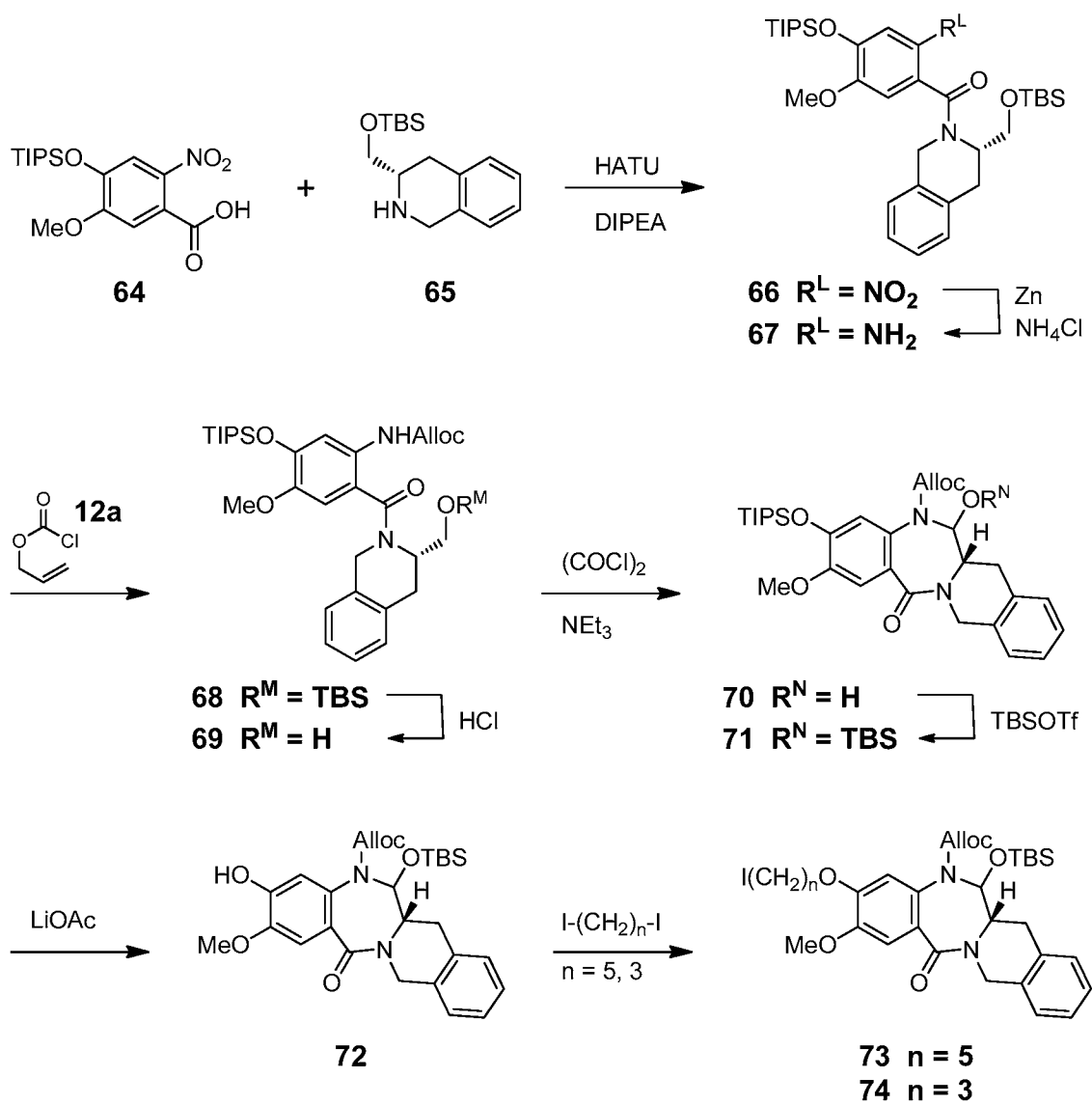
**Fig. 12**

15/26

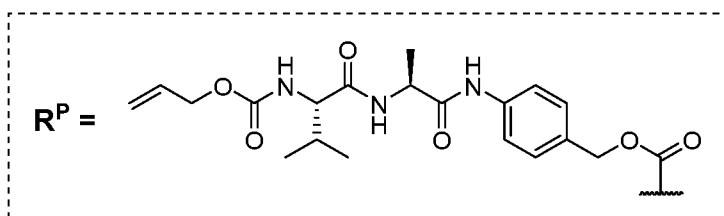
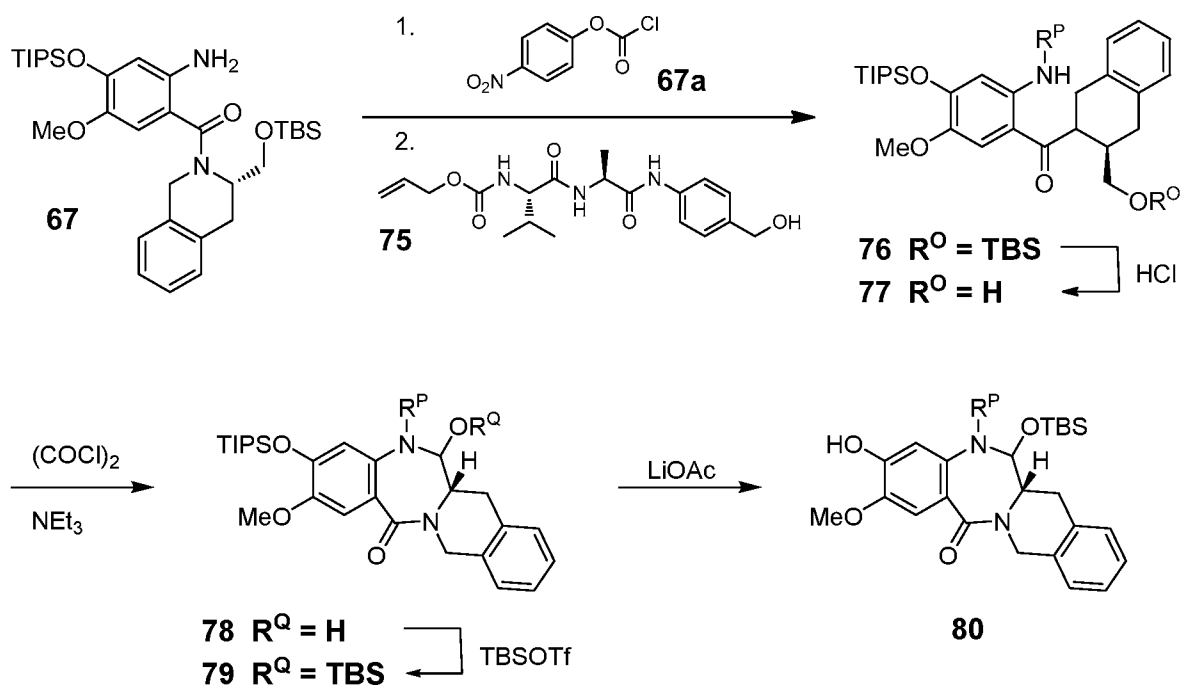
**Fig. 13**



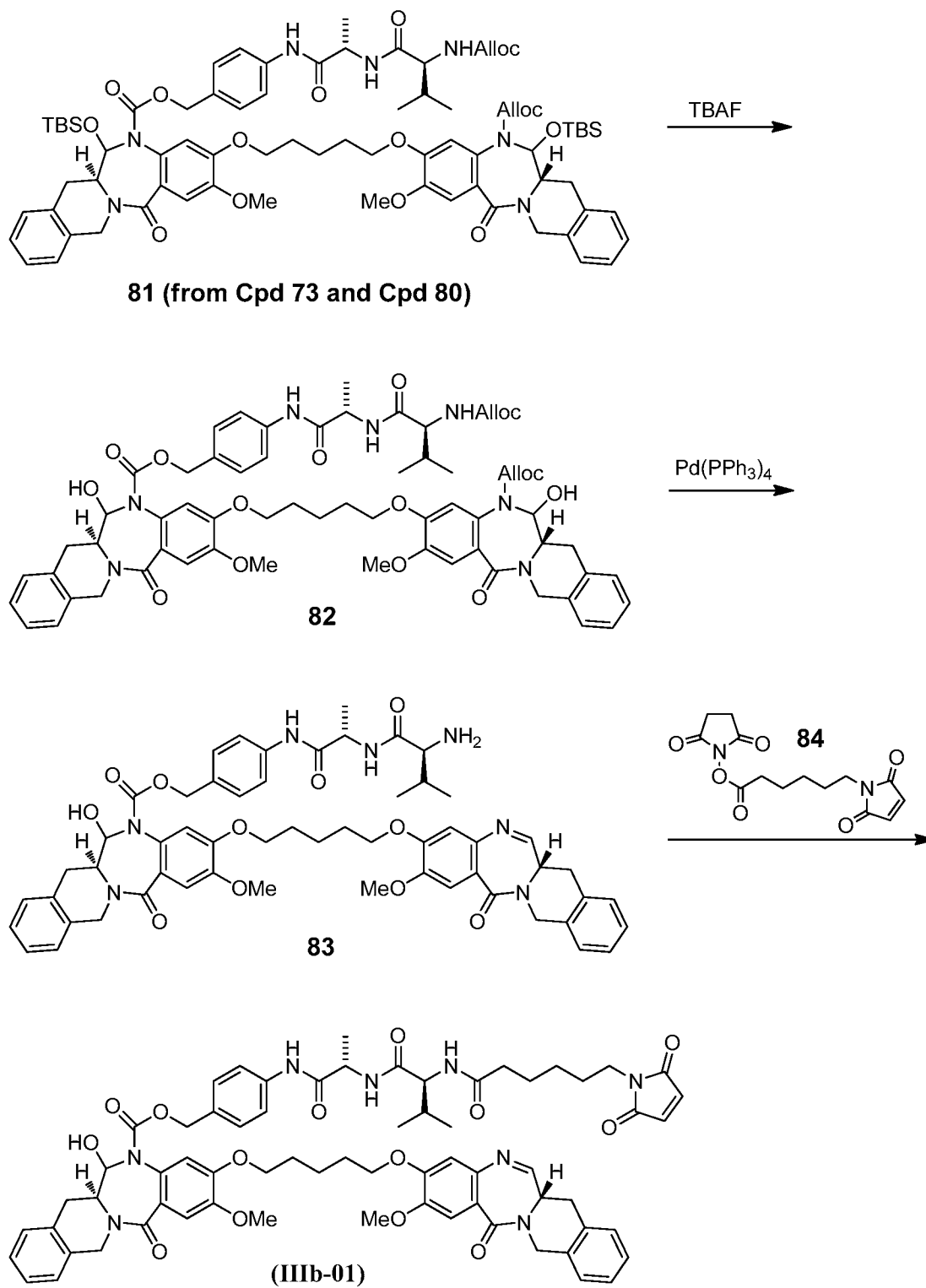
16/26

**Fig. 14**

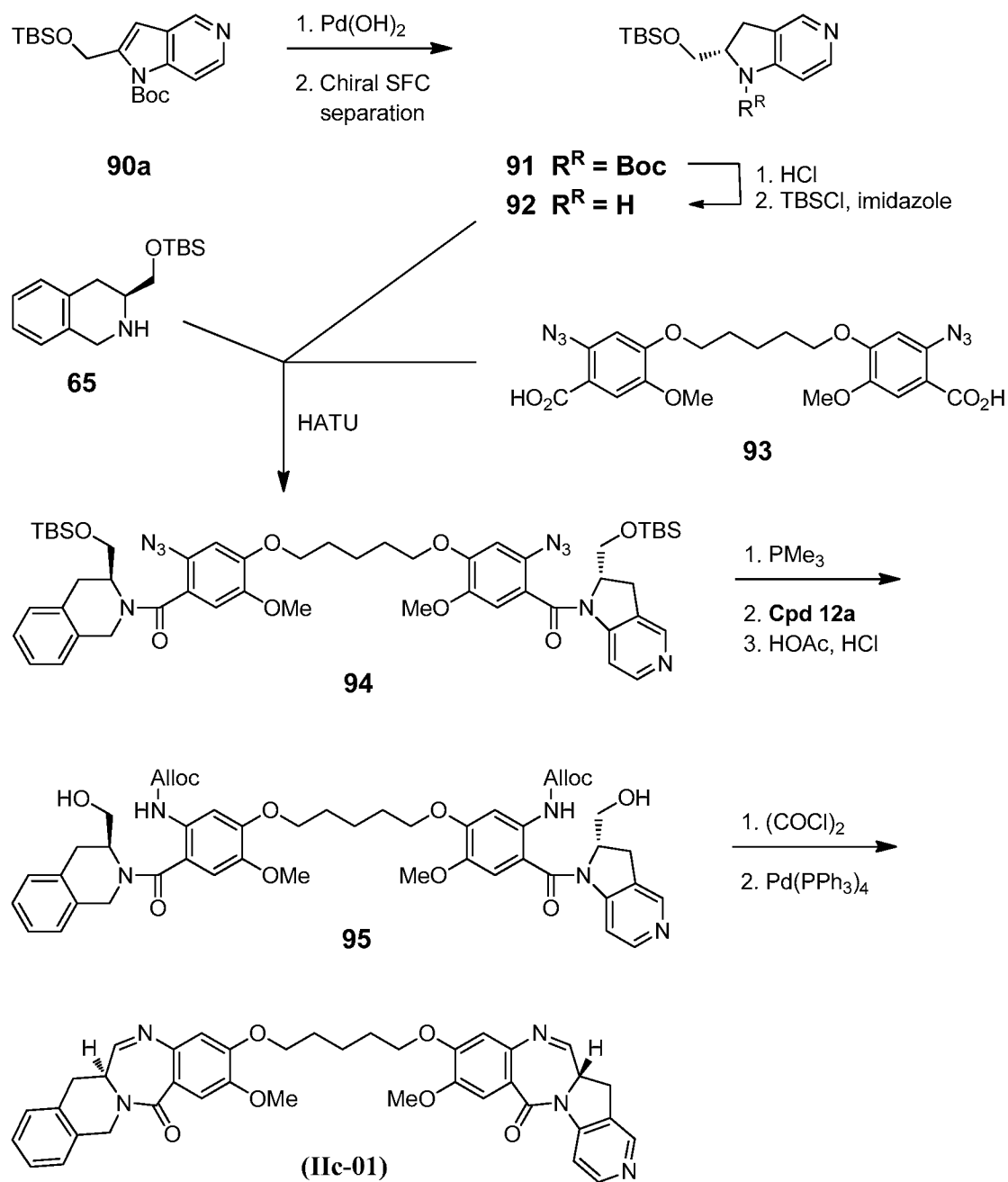
17/26

**Fig. 15**

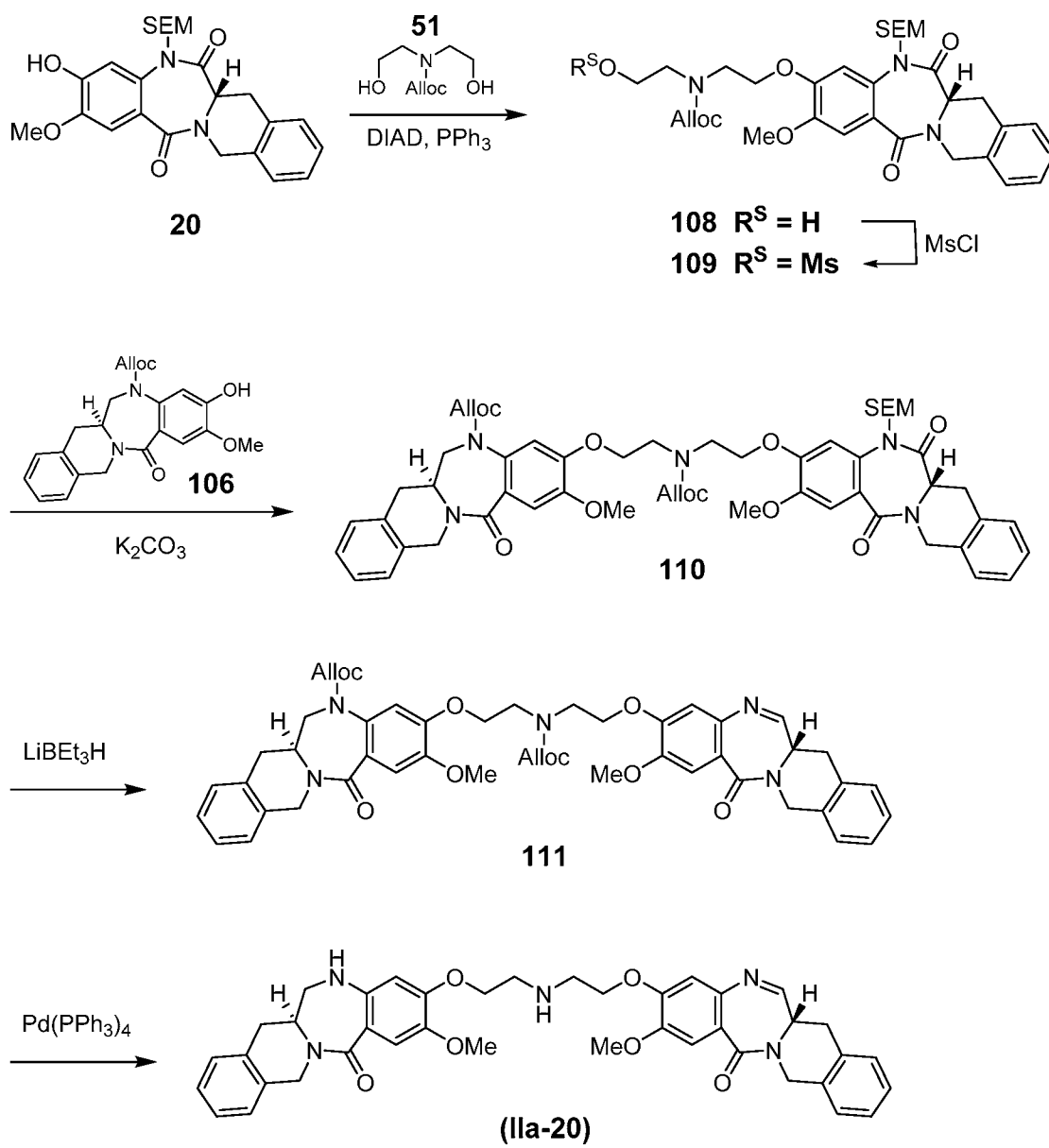
18/26

**Fig. 16**

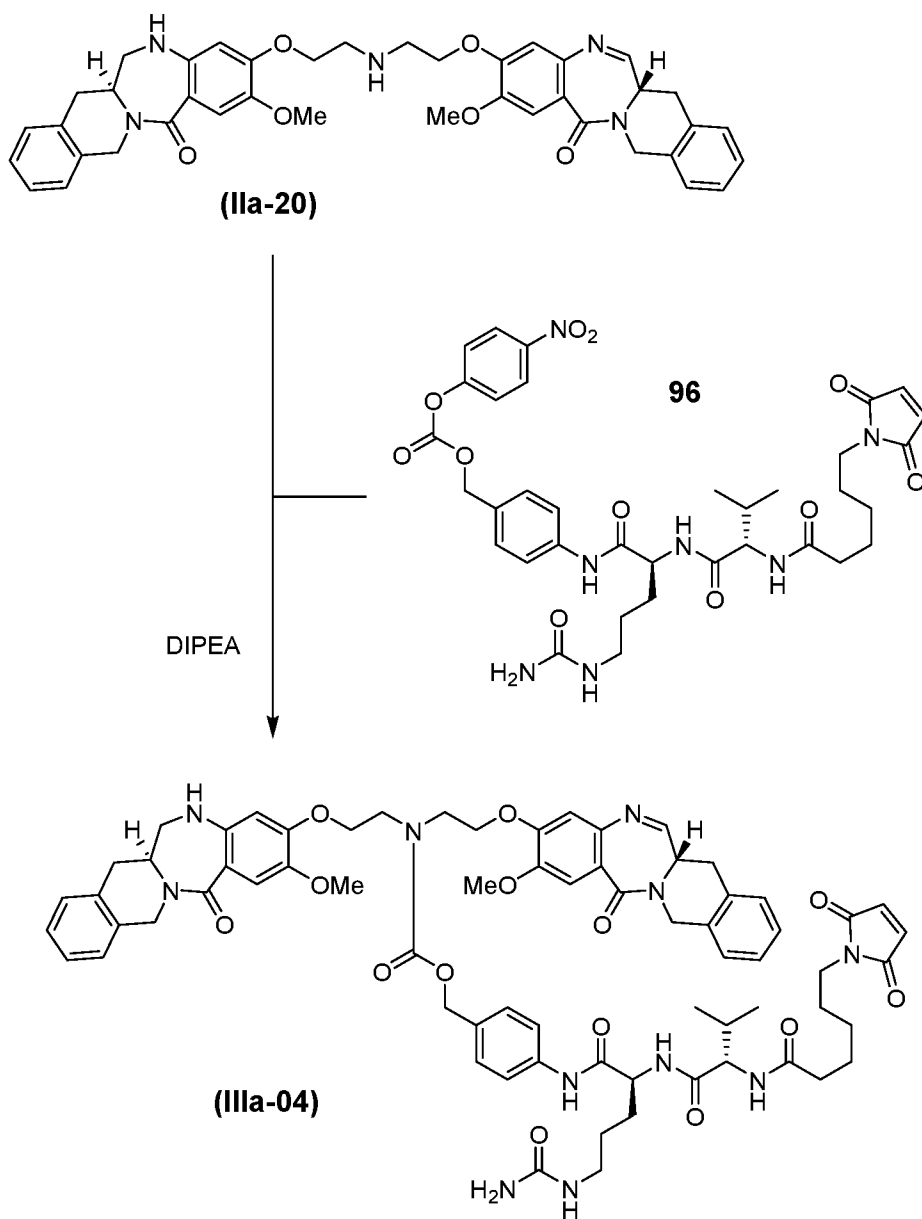
19/26

**Fig. 17**

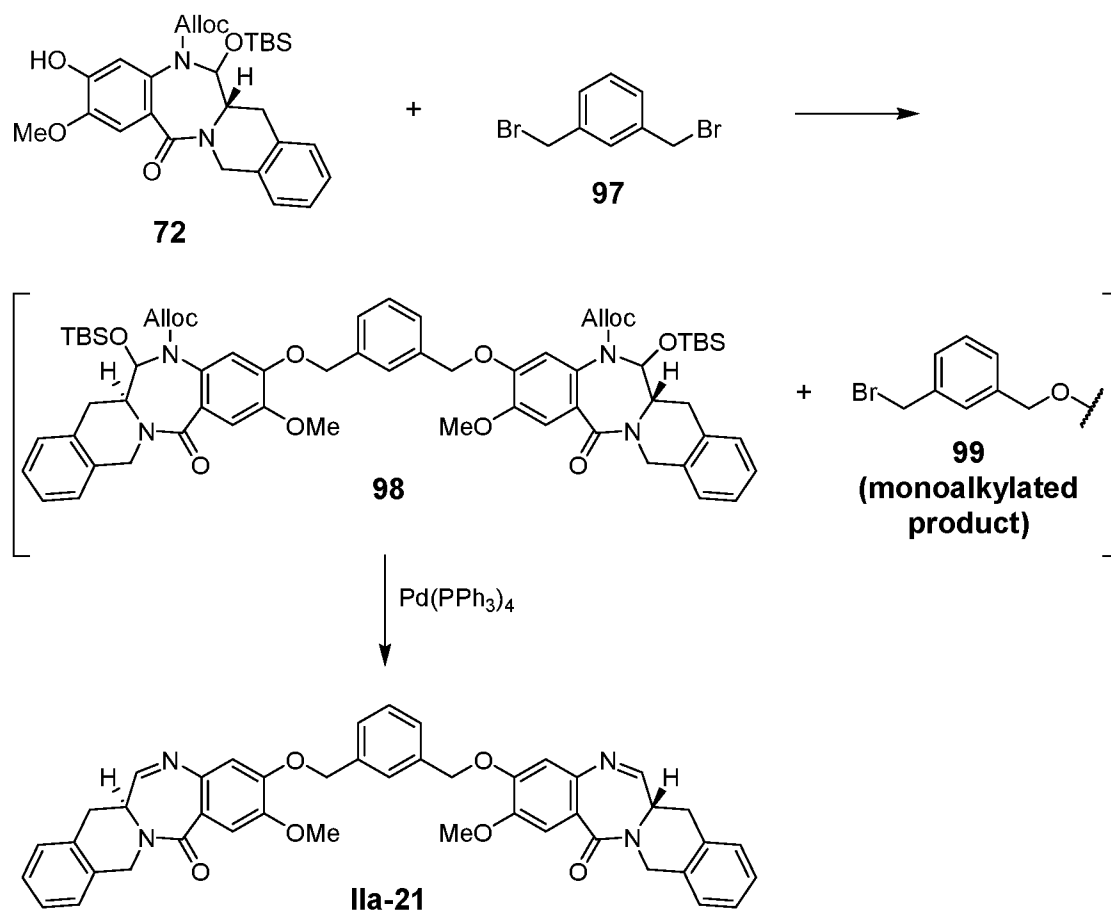
20/26

**Fig. 18a**

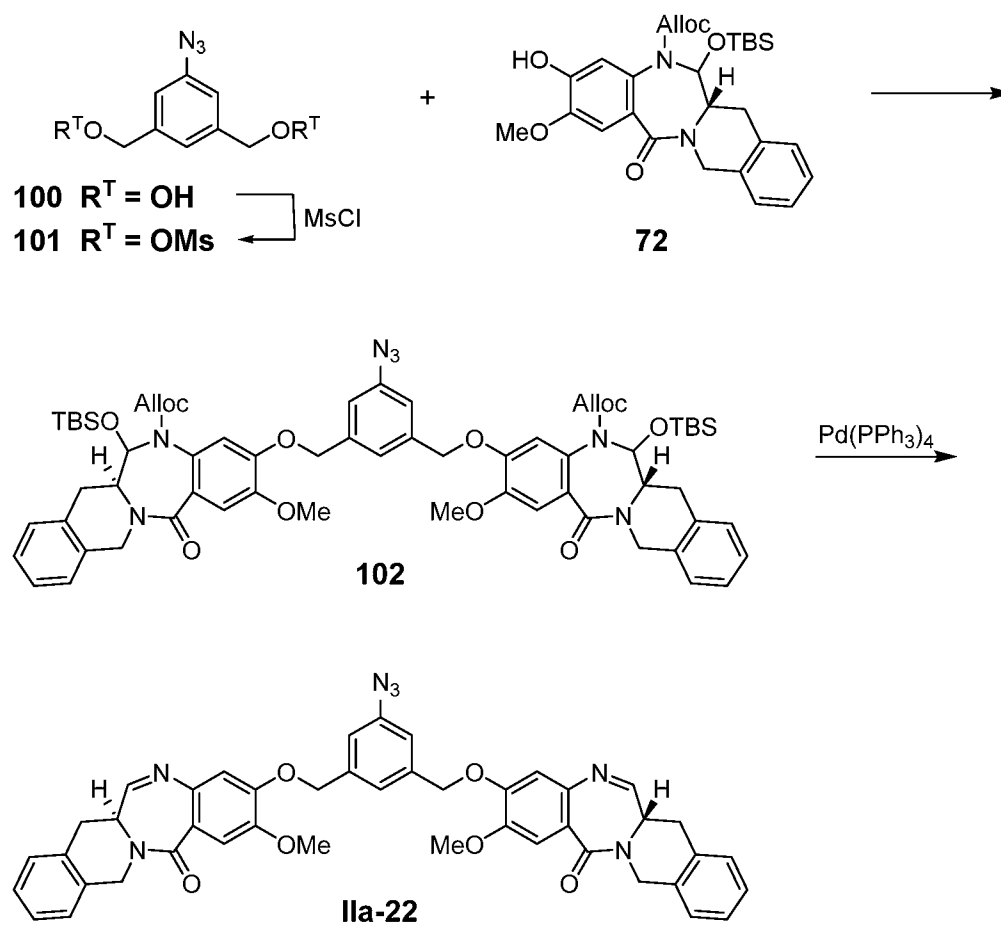
21/26

**Fig. 18b**

22/26

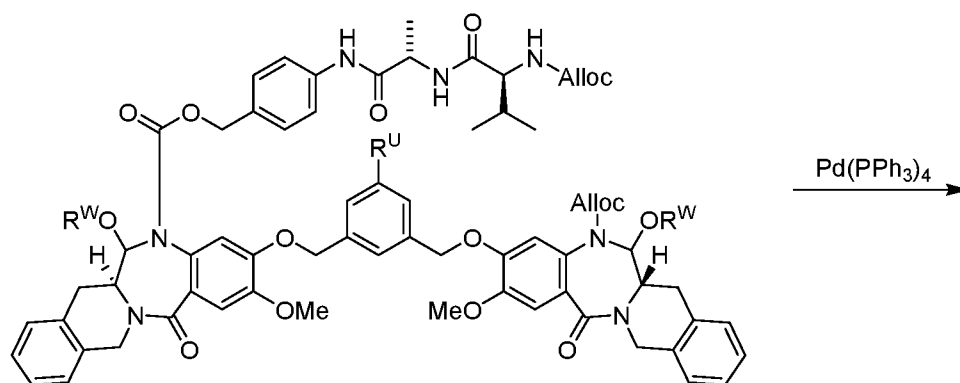
**Fig. 19**

23/26

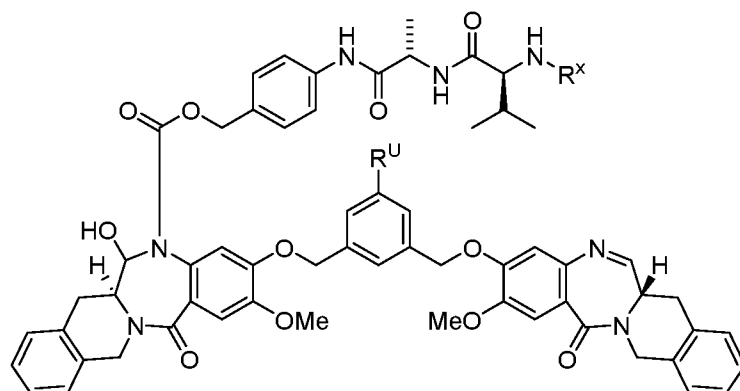
**Fig. 20**



24/26

**Fig. 21**

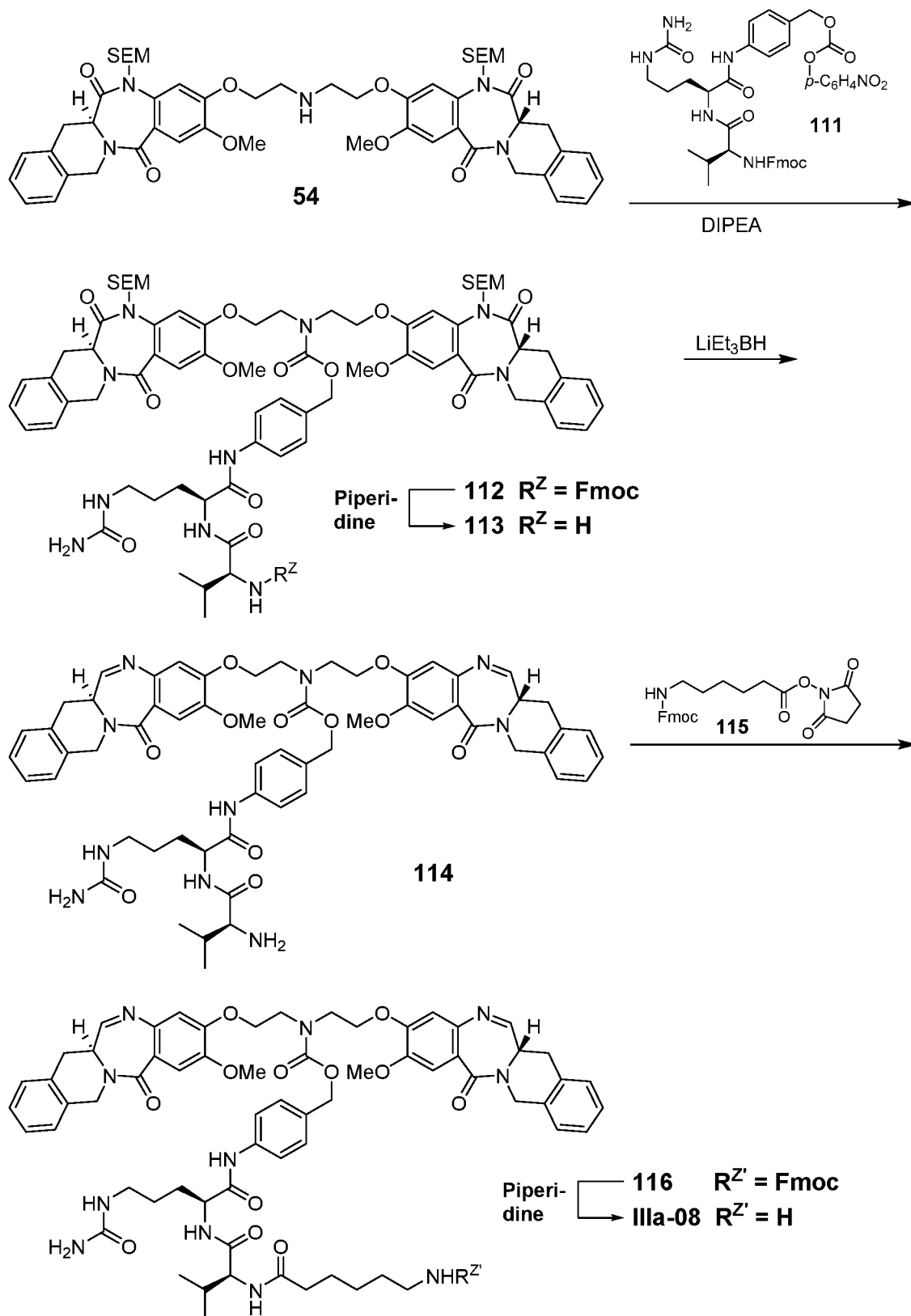
**104a**  $R^U = \text{H}, R^W = \text{TBS}$   $\xleftarrow{\text{TBAF}}$   
**105a**  $R^U = R^W = \text{H}$   $\xleftarrow{\text{TBAF}}$   
 or  
**104b**  $R^U = \text{N}_3, R^W = \text{TBS}$   $\xleftarrow{\text{TBAF}}$   
**105b**  $R^U = \text{N}_3, R^W = \text{H}$   $\xleftarrow{\text{TBAF}}$



**106a**  $R^U = R^X = \text{H}$   
**Cpd 84**  $\xrightarrow{\text{IIIb-07}}$   $R^U = \text{H}, R^X = \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C(=O)N}$   
 or  
**106b**  $R^U = R^X = \text{H}$   
**Cpd 84**  $\xrightarrow{\text{IIIb-08}}$   $R^U = \text{N}_3, R^X = \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C(=O)N}$



26/26

**Fig. 23**

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No

PCT/US2016/013136

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

INV. C07D519/00 C07D487/04 A61K31/437 A61P35/00  
ADD.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

C07D A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 2012/112687 A1 (IMMUNOGEN INC [US]; FISHKIN NATHAN [US]; MILLER MICHAEL [US]; LI WEI []) 23 August 2012 (2012-08-23) page 96, formula A6; page 1, paragraph 1; tables 1,11,12,14 -----	1-25
X	WO 2013/177481 A1 (IMMUNOGEN INC [US]) 28 November 2013 (2013-11-28) page 2nd paragraph; compounds on pages 22 to 28; claims -----	10-25
X	WO 2010/091150 A1 (IMMUNOGEN INC [US]; LI WEI [US]; FISHKIN NATHAN ELLIOTT [US]; ZHAO ROB) 12 August 2010 (2010-08-12) table 7, compound 15; page 1, paragraph 1; claims; tables 3,4,6,7 -----	1-25



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&amp;" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

7 March 2016

Date of mailing of the international search report

15/03/2016

Name and mailing address of the ISA/

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Schmid, Arnold

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/US2016/013136

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 2012112687 A1	23-08-2012	AU 2012217719 A1	18-04-2013
		AU 2012231640 A1	02-05-2013
		CA 2824864 A1	27-09-2012
		CA 2825919 A1	23-08-2012
		CN 103687623 A	26-03-2014
		CN 103702686 A	02-04-2014
		EP 2675479 A1	25-12-2013
		EP 2675480 A1	25-12-2013
		EP 2675481 A1	25-12-2013
		JP 5826863 B2	02-12-2015
		JP 2014506892 A	20-03-2014
		JP 2014521591 A	28-08-2014
		KR 20140010067 A	23-01-2014
		KR 20140010076 A	23-01-2014
		NZ 613121 A	29-05-2015
		NZ 613162 A	30-10-2015
		RU 2013141829 A	27-03-2015
		RU 2013142179 A	27-03-2015
		SG 191955 A1	30-08-2013
		SG 191965 A1	30-08-2013
		TW 201309674 A	01-03-2013
		US 2012238731 A1	20-09-2012
		US 2012244171 A1	27-09-2012
		US 2013302359 A1	14-11-2013
		US 2014088089 A1	27-03-2014
		US 2015099874 A1	09-04-2015
		WO 2012112687 A1	23-08-2012
		WO 2012112708 A1	23-08-2012
		WO 2012128868 A1	27-09-2012
WO 2013177481 A1	28-11-2013	US 2015209444 A1	30-07-2015
		WO 2013177481 A1	28-11-2013
WO 2010091150 A1	12-08-2010	AU 2010210646 A1	11-08-2011
		BR PI1008749 A2	25-08-2015
		CA 2750519 A1	12-08-2010
		CN 102365021 A	29-02-2012
		CN 105175434 A	23-12-2015
		CN 105198908 A	30-12-2015
		EP 2393362 A1	14-12-2011
		IL 214475 A	29-10-2015
		JP 2012516896 A	26-07-2012
		JP 2015017095 A	29-01-2015
		JP 2015187144 A	29-10-2015
		KR 20110120308 A	03-11-2011
		NZ 594177 A	28-02-2014
		NZ 620649 A	25-09-2015
		RU 2011136686 A	20-03-2013
		RU 2015103852 A	10-11-2015
		SG 173152 A1	29-08-2011
		SG 2014009138 A	28-03-2014
		US 2010203007 A1	12-08-2010
		US 2013266596 A1	10-10-2013
		US 2013302357 A1	14-11-2013
		US 2015030616 A1	29-01-2015
		WO 2010091150 A1	12-08-2010